

Introduction to the Command Line

The Fat-Free Guide to Unix and Linux Commands

Second Edition

Introduction to the Command Line

The Fat-Free Guide to Unix and Linux Commands

Second Edition

Copyright © 2010 Nicholas Marsh

All rights reserved.

ISBN: 1450588301

EAN-13: 9781450588300

www.DontFearTheCommandLine.com

AIX® is a registered trademark of IBM Corp.

BSD® is a registered trademark of the University of California, Berkeley

CentOS is property of CentOS Ltd.

Debian® is a registered trademark of Software in the Public Interest, Inc

Fedora® is a registered trademark of Red Hat, Inc.

FreeBSD® is a registered trademark of The FreeBSD Foundation

Gentoo® is a registered trademark of The Gentoo Foundation

HP-UX® and Tru-64® are registered trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company

IRIX® is a registered trademark of Silicon Graphics, Inc.

Linux® is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

Mac OS X® is a registered trademark of Apple, Inc.

Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation

NetBSD® is a registered trademark of The NetBSD Foundation

OpenBSD® is a registered trademark of Theo DeRaadt

Red Hat® is a registered trademark of Red Hat, Inc.

Solaris® and OpenSolaris are registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems

SUSE® is a trademark of Novell, Inc.

Ubuntu® is a registered trademark of Canonical Ltd.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group

UnixWare® and OpenServer® are registered trademarks of The SCO Group

All other trademarks used in this book are the property of their respective owners.

Use of any trademark in this book does not constitute an affiliation with or endorsement from the trademark holder.

All information in this book is presented on an "as-is" basis. No warranty or guarantee is provided and the author and/or publisher shall not be held liable for any loss or damage.

Contents at a Glance

Introduction.....	5
Section 1: Overview of Unix, Linux and BSD Architecture	9
Section 2: Command Line Basics	17
Section 3: Advanced Shell Features and Commands	37
Section 4: Text Editing and Extraction	59
Section 5: Users, Groups, and Security	80
Section 6: Process Control and Scheduling	105
Section 7: Startup and Shutdown	121
Section 8: Network Commands.....	138
Section 9: Hardware Management Commands	166
Section 10: File Systems	176
Section 11: Backup and Restore Commands.....	191
Section 12: Monitoring and Troubleshooting	199
Section 13: Printing Commands	223
Section 14: Software Installation	230
Section 15: System Administration Utilities	244
Appendix A: Bash Shortcut Keys	247

**"UNIX is basically a simple operating system, but you have
to be a genius to understand the simplicity."**

– Dennis Ritchie

Creator of the C programming language and co-creator of UNIX

Introduction

The command line can be an intimidating and unforgiving environment. Unlike working in graphical environments, it's not entirely clear what commands one must execute in a terminal to accomplish a given task. Couple this with the fact that the command line does not prevent you from doing things that might cause irreparable damage to your system, and it becomes clear why many people never take the time to learn how to use it.

Despite the hidden dangers and uncertainty faced by new users (known jokingly as "newbies" in the technology industry), you shouldn't fear the command line. Armed with the information in this book you will acquire the skills necessary to become more proficient in the command line environment. You will discover that most Unix, Linux, and BSD systems share the same core architecture, with only a few subtle differences. After learning the basic architecture and commands of Unix, Linux, and BSD systems you will easily be able to transition between the different platforms.

To aid the learning process, I recommend downloading one or more of the free operating systems listed below to practice the commands in this guide.

Operating System	Type	Website
Ubuntu	Linux	www.ubuntu.com
Fedora	Linux	www.fedoraproject.org
CentOS	Linux	www.centos.org
openSUSE	Linux	www.opensuse.org
OpenSolaris	Unix	www.opensolaris.org
FreeBSD	BSD	www.freebsd.org

It's a worthwhile experience to experiment with multiple Unix, Linux, and BSD distributions to get a broader knowledge of the various platforms. This will help expand your knowledge of the various Unix-like operating systems and give you the skills necessary to work in any command line environment.

Linux is the recommended starting point for beginners. It has support for all the latest hardware and provides a user-friendly installation process. The OpenSolaris

Unix platform is also a good starting point, as it is one of the most newbie-friendly Unix-based systems. BSD installation is a bit more challenging and requires advanced technical knowledge or previous experience with Unix and Linux systems.

Tip

I highly recommend Ubuntu Server Edition. It provides an easy install experience and an excellent command line learning environment. Visit www.ubuntu.com for more information about the Ubuntu Server Linux distribution.

If you are a Microsoft Windows user, you may already have some command line experience. If you have ever opened a DOS prompt and executed a command such as **ping**, **nslookup**, or **ipconfig** then you know these can be immensely helpful. Unix, Linux, and BSD systems offer similar commands. For example, the **ping** and **nslookup** commands work the same on Unix/Linux as they do in DOS. You should note, however, that the DOS **ipconfig** command's counterpart in the Unix/Linux/BSD world is **ifconfig**. If you'

). From the13(o)-2(u)-4183(y)7(o)-2(o)

derived from the original Unix code base

popular operating systems including FreeBSD, OpenBSD, and NetBSD. BSD code can also be found in proprietary proprietary operating systems created by Microsoft, Apple, and Sun Microsystems.

Commercial Unix systems began to appear in the early 1980s. These systems combined various amounts of Unix and BSD code along with vendor-specific enhancements to create new platforms such as AIX, HP-UX, and Sun Solaris. Today, commercial Unix systems can be found in data centers at many large companies running mission critical applications.

In 1991, a computer science student at the University of Helsinki in Finland named Linus Torvalds created the Linux operating system. While Linux shares much of the core concepts of Unix, it contains no Unix code. This means it can be freely distributed in the same manner as BSD (although under a different license). The first commercial Linux distributions hit the market in the mid 1990s. Since then hundreds of Linux variants have been developed. The open nature of the Linux operating system has contributed to its success and helped make it one of the most popular server operating systems in use today.

The Unix platform has been around since long before graphical user interfaces were invented. The fact that Unix-based systems are still a commanding force in modern computing is a testament to the industrial design of the platform. With Unix, Linux, and BSD popularity at an all time high, now is the perfect time to explore these platforms and join the movement.

Conventions Used in This Book

!
0 b 0 0 !

File and directory paths are displayed in a fixed width font

command

Commands are displayed in a bold fixed width font

[FILE], [DIRECTORY], [ETC]

Items enclosed in brackets represent a variable parameter to be specified by the user (such as a file or directory)

```
$ ping 192.168.1.1
```

Examples using the \$ shell prompt are executed with a non-privileged user account

```
# ping 192.168.1.1
```

Examples using the # shell prompt are executed at the root user

```
...
```

Additional command output truncated (to save space)

```
$ whe<TAB>
```

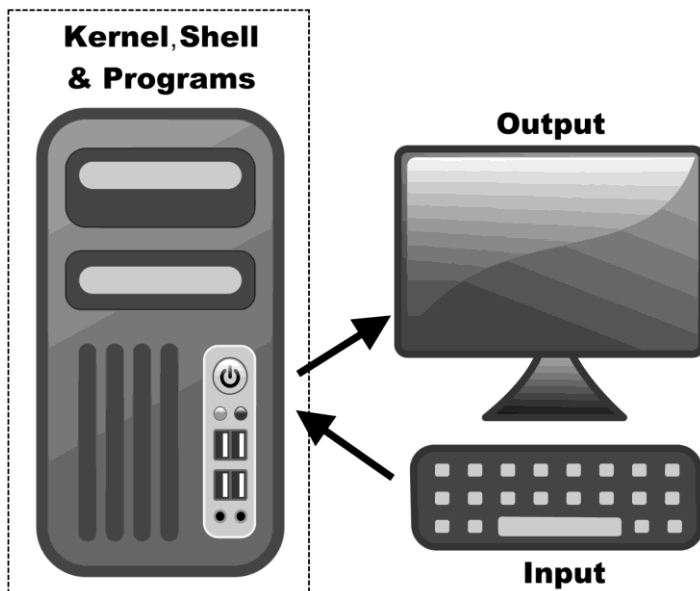
Items enclosed in <> indicate an action key such as <TAB>, <ESC>, <SPACE>, etc.

Section 1:

Overview of Unix, Linux and BSD Architecture

The Kernel

At the heart of every Unix, Linux, and BSD system is the kernel. The kernel provides a layer between the computer hardware and user applications. When applications need to display output to a screen or write files to the disk, the kernel facilitates these actions. Think of the kernel as the conductor in a symphony; it directs all the actions of the operating system.



Overview of the Kernel

When you type a command on the keyboard, the computer hardware receives the signals and transfers them to the kernel. The kernel recognizes the key strokes and draws them on the display. Once the typed command is executed, the program will utilize the kernel to request processor, memory, and other resources in order to perform the requested task.

Popular Versions of Unix, Linux, and BSD

There are many different Unix, Linux, and BSD distributions. The tables below list the most popular systems in use today.

BSD Systems

OS	Description
Darwin	BSD-based core of the Mac OS X operating system
FreeBSD	User friendly BSD-based operating system
OpenBSD	Security focused BSD-based operating system
NetBSD	Highly portable BSD-based operating system

Linux Systems

OS	Description
Red Hat Enterprise Linux	Popular commercial Linux distribution created by Red Hat, Inc.
Fedora	Free community-based distribution that serves as a test bed for new technologies that feed into Red Hat Enterprise Linux
CentOS	Free binary-compatible clone of Red Hat Enterprise Linux
Debian	Popular non-commercial Linux distribution
Ubuntu	User-friendly Linux distribution based on Debian
SUSE Enterprise Linux	Commercial Linux distribution created by Novell, Inc.
openSUSE	Free community-based distribution based on SUSE Enterprise Linux

Unix Systems

OS	Description
AIX	IBM's proprietary Unix platform
HP-UX	Hewlett Packard's proprietary Unix platform
Solaris	Sun Microsystems' proprietary Unix platform
OpenSolaris	Open source version of the Solaris operating system

Note	<i>Other notable Unix platforms include SGI IRIX, Compaq Tru64, and SCO UnixWare/OpenServer; however, these systems are no longer widely used or supported.</i>
------	---

Unix, Linux, and BSD Directory Structure

Most Unix, Linux, and BSD systems share a similar directory structure. The table below lists the main directories commonly used across all platforms.

Directory	Purpose
<code>/</code>	Root (top level) directory
<code>/boot</code>	Linux kernel and boot loader files
<code>/stand</code> <code>/unix</code> <code>/vmunix</code> <code>/kernel</code>	Unix kernel directories
<code>/bin</code> <code>/usr</code> <code>/usr/bin</code>	Core binary programs for normal users
<code>/sbin</code> <code>/usr/sbin</code>	Administrative programs primarily used by the root user
<code>/opt</code>	Optional add-on/third-party software
<code>/etc</code>	System configuration files
<code>/home</code>	User home directories
<code>/root</code>	Home directory of the root user
<code>/lib</code>	Shared libraries used by various programs
<code>/media</code> <code>/mnt</code>	Mounted local and remote file systems
<code>/var</code>	Variable data (such as system logs) that changes often
<code>/tmp</code>	Temporary files used by various programs
<code>/dev</code>	Device files
<code>/sys</code>	Virtual device driver files used by the kernel
<code>/proc</code>	Virtual parameter and informational files used by the kernel
<code>/lost+found</code>	Files that have been recovered (after a system failure)

Unix, Linux, and BSD directory structure

These directories are organized in a manner which separates various components of the operating system in an easy to manage file structure. The `/home` directory is where users spend most of their time. Files outside of this directory are usually secured so that only the root user can edit or delete them. This protects vital programs and configuration files and prevents users from accidentally damaging the core operating system. It also helps secure the system by preventing malicious programs from being able to compromise critical files and settings.

Important Files

In addition to sharing a similar directory structure, most systems will also have the important files listed in following table.

File	Purpose
/etc/passwd	User account settings
/etc/shadow	Encrypted passwords for user accounts
/etc/group	Group settings
/etc/fstab	Local file system settings
/etc/mtab	Mounted file systems
/etc/inittab	System startup settings
/etc/exports	NFS share settings
/etc/hosts	Static name resolution file
/etc/hostname	System host name setting
/etc/hosts.allow	Network hosts allowed to connect to the system
/etc/resolve.conf	DNS settings
/etc/hosts.deny	Network hosts not allowed to connect to the system
/etc/issue	Message displayed at shell login
/etc/issue.net	Remote login message
/etc/motd	Message displayed after logging in
/etc/profile	Shell environment settings
/etc/shells	Valid shells permitted to login
/etc/sudoers	Users allowed to use the <code>su</code> command (discussed on page 90)
/var/log/messages	Kernel messages log file
/var/log/wtmp	Current user login log file
/var/log/lastlog	User login history log file
/var/log/kern.log	Kernel log file
/var/log/syslog	Syslog messages log file

Important files

This is just a brief list of the most commonly used files shared across most platforms. As a general rule, configuration files are located in the `/etc` directory and system logs are stored in `/var/log`. As you become more familiar with Unix, Linux, and BSD systems you will begin working with these files to manage system configuration and troubleshoot problems.

Common Unix, Linux, and BSD File Systems

Unix, Linux, and BSD share support for several types of file systems. The table below provides a matrix of the most common file systems and their supported platforms.

	AIX	HP-UX	Solaris	BSD	Linux
EXT2-4	Partial	No	Partial	Partial	Yes
JFS (IBM)	Yes	No	No	No	Yes
HFS+	No	No	No	No	Partial
UFS	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Partial
VxFS	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
ZFS	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

File system support matrix

EXT versions 2 through 4 are file systems used by the Linux operating system. Currently, ext3 is the most widely used file system on Linux distributions. The recently released ext4 file system has many new features and performance benefits over ext3. It will become the default file system for most Linux systems within the next few years. Versions before ext3 are considered obsolete and are rarely.

JFS is IBM's journaling file system primarily used on the AIX operating system.

HFS+ is Apple's file system used on their Unix-based Mac OS X operating system. HFS+ isn't widely supported by other operating systems but it can be mounted as read-only on Linux systems.

UFS is a Unix file system used primarily by BSD distributions.

VxFS is a file system developed by Veritas Software Corporation (now known as Symantec) and used on HP-UX systems. It is also supported on several other Unix and Linux systems although it is rarely used outside of HP-UX.

ZFS is a new and highly robust file system developed by Sun Microsystems. It is primarily used on the Solaris operating system but also has limited support for some Linux and BSD systems.

Devices

Every Unix, Linux, and BSD system has a directory that is known as `/dev`. This directory contains device files (sometime referred to as special files) that represent hardware installed on the system such as `/dev/zero` and `/dev/daemon`.

```
# ls -l /dev/
d . . . . .,! 2!      ! b e !! 25-!! 23! 3121.15.33! 27;41! b e !
d . . . . .!! 2!      ! e !! 21-! 286! 3121.15.33! 22;41! b b !
d . . . . .,! 2!      ! b e !! 25-!!! 5! 3121.15.33! 27;41! b e !
d . . . . .!! 2!      ! !!! 21-!! 6:! 3121.15.33! 22;41! c e !
e . . . . .!! 3!      ! !!!!!!!! 811! 3121.15.33! 27;41! c d !
e . . . . .!! 4!      ! !!!!!!!! 7! 3121.15.33! 22;41! c !
                !! 2!      ! !!!!!!!! 4! 3121.15.33! 27;41! de !.?! 1!
                !! 2!      ! !!!!!!!! 4! 3121.15.33! 27;41! de !.?! 1!
e . . . . .!! 3!      ! !!!!!!! 433! 3121.15.33! 27;41! d b !
d . . . . .!! 2!      ! !!!!! 6-!!! 2! 3121.15.34! 18;47! d !
                !! 2!      ! !!!!!!!! 22! 3121.15.33! 27;41! d !.?! 0 d0 d !
d . . . . .!! 2!      ! !!! 21-!! 69! 3121.15.33! 22;41! d `e b` b d !
e . . . . .!! 7!      ! !!!!!!!! 23! 3121.15.33! 22;41! e !
e . . . . .!! 3!      ! !!!!!!!! 9! 3121.15.33! 22;41! e !
d . . . . .,! 2!      ! b e !! 25-!!! 4! 3121.15.33! 27;41! e !
                !! 2!      ! !!!!!!!! 4! 3121.15.33! 27;41! e e! .?! 1!
//!
```

Example listing of devices in the `/dev` directory

Within the `/dev` directory there can be several hundred files. Most of these files are of little use in everyday activities. As the system administrator of a Unix or Linux system you will primarily be working with the device files that represent your disk drive(s). Knowing the path to your hard drive is important when working with commands related to file systems. More on this topic is covered in Section 10 of this guide.

Note

Device naming conventions used in `/dev` vary across each distribution.

Within `/dev`, there are also a few helpful pseudo-devices. Pseudo-devices do not represent actual hardware and exist only to perform a specific task. The table below describes the most commonly used pseudo-devices.

File	Purpose
<code>/dev/zero</code>	File that produces a continuous stream of 0-byte characters
<code>/dev/random</code>	Random number generator
<code>/dev/null</code>	Special file that discards any data written to it

The Shell

The command line interpreter, also known as the shell, is a program that accepts input from a user (typically a command of some sort) and performs the requested task. Once that task has completed, the program will terminate and return the user to the shell.

The shell's prompt identifies the type of shell being used. There are two basic types of shell prompts:

- \$ Normal user shell (may also be % or > on some systems)
- # Root user shell

Below is the output of the **whoami** command (discussed on page 93) which highlights the difference between normal user and root shell prompts on the command line.

```
$ whoami
d
```

Normal user shell

```
# whoami
```

Root user shell

Normal users typically have a limited amount of access to the system while the root user has unrestricted access. Section 5 covers this topic in more detail.

Warning

The root user can do anything on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. It is important to know when you are working as root to prevent accidental damage to your system.

Many systems add customized information to the shell prompt. This information can be a handy indicator of things like the current user's login name, system host name, and the current directory as shown in the next example.

```
nick@mylaptop:/var/log $
```

Example of a customized shell prompt

The table below describes the information displayed in the customized shell prompt displayed in the previous example.

nick	@	mylaptop	:	/var/log	\$
User Name	Spacer	Computer Name	Spacer	Current Directory	Shell Prompt

Types of Shells

There are several different types of shells for Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. Each shell has its own set of features and usage syntax. The next table describes the most popular shells that are currently available.

Shell	Prompt	Name	Notes
sh	\$	Borne Shell	Default on some Unix systems
bash	\$	Borne Again Shell	Enhanced replacement for the Borne shell Default on most Linux and Mac OS X systems
csh	%	C Shell	Default on many BSD systems
tcsh	>	T C Shell	Enhanced replacement for the C shell
ksh	\$	Korn shell	Default on AIX systems

Types of shells

The **bash** shell is the most popular shell in use today. It is the default shell on all Linux systems and is also available for most Unix and BSD systems. Other shells like **csh**, **tcsh**, and **ksh** are typically used by default on non-Linux systems.

Accessing the Shell

When you first boot your system you are presented with a login prompt similar to the example pictured below.

```
Vc      ! M      ! : /15!  
!  
M      ;!      d !  
Qb      e ;! ++++++!  
!  
$
```

After you enter your username and password the system will authenticate your login credentials via the `/etc/passwd` file. If the login information is correct, the system will start your shell (which is also specified in `/etc/passwd`). The `$` shell prompt indicates you are logged in and "ready to go."

Welcome to the world of the command line... Let's get started!

Section 2:

Command Line Basics

Overview

This section covers the most essential commands every user should know. These basic commands cover topics like getting help, navigating directories, and listing files. Before you begin, there are three important rules you need to know about the command line:

1. Unix, Linux, and BSD systems are case (and space) sensitive. This means that a file named `! N G !` is not same as `! !` as it would be on a DOS or Windows system.
2. There is no "recycle bin" or "trash can" when working in the command line environment. When files are deleted on the command line, they instantly disappear forever.
3. You should always practice new commands on a testing system that is not used in a production environment. This minimizes the chances of an accident that can take down an important system.

Knowing this, we can now begin working with basic Unix, Linux and BSD commands.

Note

Examples listed in this book were created on various Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. Many of the commands, options, and features are the same on other platforms; however, there may be slight differences. You should always consult the manual for your specific platform to ensure compatibility with the examples provided. See page 19 for more information on how to access the online manual.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
man	Online manual for command line programs.
whatis	Display a description of the specified command.
ls	List the contents of a directory.
pwd	Display the current/working directory.
cd	Change (navigate) directories.
tree	Display the contents of a directory in a tree hierarchy format.
find	Search for files and directories.
locate	Search the locate database for files and directories.
whereis	Display the location of binary files, manual pages, and source code for the specified command.
file	Display the file type of the specified file.
stat	Display extended information about a file system, file, or directory.
date	Display or set the system clock.
cal	Display a calendar on the command line.
history	Display commands that have recently been executed.
clear	Clear the contents of the current screen.
logout	Logout of the system.
exit	Exit the current shell.

Glossary of terms used in this section:

Argument	One or more variable input items used by a command line program.
Binary	A compiled program or data file.
Flag	Synonym for <i>Option</i> .
Man Page	Online manual for shell commands.
Option	A modifier that alters the default operation of a command.
Parameter	Synonym for <i>Argument</i> .
Recursively	Includes all subdirectories when executing a command.
Shell Script	A grouping of commands in a plain text executable file.
Source Code	Uncompiled code for a program.
Switch	Synonym for <i>Option</i> .
Working Directory	Your current location within the directory tree.

man

Purpose: Online manual for command line programs.

Usage syntax: `man [command]`

```
$ man ls
MT)2*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!V  !D  b e!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! MT)2*!
!
OBNF!
!!!!!!  !.!  !e  d  !d  !
!
TZOPQTJT!
!!!!!!  ! \PQUJPO^//! \GJMF^//!
!
EFTDSJQUJPO!
!!!!!! M  !!      b  !!bc  !!  !GJMF! )  !d      !e  d  !c!!!!
!!!!!!e  b  */! T  !      !b  bc  db  !  !  !  !.d  TVY!  !!
!!!!!!..  /!
!
!!!!!!..b-!..b  !
!!!!!!e!  !      !      !  b  !      ! /!
//!
```

Viewing the manual page for the ls command

The **man** command displays the manual (often referred to as the *man page*) for the specified command. Each manual page provides detailed information about a command's options and usage. In the above example, executing **man ls** displays the manual for the **ls** command.

The table below describes the keys that can be used to navigate the manual program.

Key	Function	Key	Function
Up Arrow	Navigate one line up	Down Arrow	Navigate one line down
Page Up	Navigate one page up	Page Down	Navigate one page down
Q	Quit the man program	/[STRING]	Search for a string of text

The **man** command is your most valuable resource for help on the command line. Always look to the manual pages for any command if you are unsure of its proper usage syntax.

Common usage examples:

- `man [COMMAND]`

Display the manual for the specified command
- `man -k [KEYWORD]`

Search manual pages for the specified keyword

whatis

Purpose: Display a description of the specified command.

Usage syntax: `whatis [-b] [-i] [-P PQUJPOT^] [-D PNNBOE^]`

```
$ whatis ls
! )2*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! !e d !d !
Viewing the manual description of the ls command
```

whatis displays a brief description of the specified command. The above example displays the description of the **ls** command using **whatis**. This can be used as a helpful reminder of a command's purpose without having to refer to the **man** command.

Multiple commands can be used with one **whatis** query to display the description of each individual command. For example, typing **whatis ls who rm** would display the description of all three commands at once as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ whatis ls who rm
! )2*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! !e d !d !
! )2*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! ! ! ! e! !
! )2*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! ! ! ! e d !
Viewing the manual description of multiple commands
```

Note

Some Unix systems may use the **apropos** command in place of **whatis**.

Common usage examples:

whatis [COMMAND]	Display the description of the specified command
whatis -w [WILDCARD]	Search for commands using a wildcard

1s

Purpose: List the contents of a directory.

Usage syntax: ! \PQUJPOT^! \EJSFDUPSZ0GJMF^

```
$ ls
O      /      !! T      M      /      !! U E M      /      !!!
```

Typical output of the ls command

Executing the `ls` command displays a simple list of files in the current directory, as shown in the above example. To see more information about the files in a directory you can use command line options to activate additional features, as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ ls -l
. . . . ! 2! d ! b ! 46179! 311:..16.2:! 19;52! O / !
. . . . ! 2! d ! b ! ! ! ! 34! 311:..16.2:! 19;54! T M / !
. . . . ! 2! d ! b ! ! ! ! 48! 311:..16.2:! 19;54! U E M / !
```

Using the -l option with the ls command

In this example, the `-l` option is used to produce a detailed list of files including the permissions, owner, group, and modification date/time. The table below describes the output of the `ls -l` command.

Permissions	Number of Links	Owner & Group	Size	Modification Date	File or Directory
-rwxr-xr-x!	2!	d b !	46179!	311:. 16. 2:!! 19;52!	o / !

Description of fields displayed with the ls -l command

Most command line programs have numerous options available. The `ls` command is no exception. By combining these options you can activate multiple features at the same time. For example, combining the `-a` option with `-l` produces a detailed file list that includes hidden files (files begin with a dot).

```
$ ls -l -a
e . . !! 3! d ! b !! 51:7! 311:.16.2:! 32:25! /!
e . . !:3! d ! b !! 51:7! 311:.16.2:! 31:57! /!
. . . .!! 2! d ! b !!! 279! 311:.16.2:! 32:25! /N I ee G !
. . . .!! 2! d ! b ! 46179! 311:.16.2:! 19:52! O / !
. . . .!! 2! d ! b !!!!! 34! 311:.16.2:! 19:54! T M / !
. . . .!! 2! d ! b !!!!! 48! 311:.16.2:! 19:54! U E M / !
```

Using multiple options with the ls command

(Continued...)

Tip

Most command line options can be combined using shorthand notation. For example, `ls -l -a` can be shortened to `ls -la`.

Note

Command line options are not universal. Each command has its own set of options that are specific to that program. Additionally, each implementation of the same command on different platforms may use different options. Refer to the man pages for a complete list of command line options supported on your system.

Common usage examples:

<code>ls</code>	Display a basic list of files in the current directory
<code>ls [DIRECTORY]</code>	Display a basic list of files in the specified directory
<code>ls -l</code>	List files with details
<code>ls -la</code>	List hidden files
<code>ls -lh</code>	List file sizes in "human readable format" (KB, MB, etc.)
<code>ls -R</code>	Recursively list all subdirectories
<code>ls -d [DIRECTORY]</code>	List only the specified directory (not its contents)

pwd

Purpose: Display the current/working directory.

Usage syntax: `pwd`

```
$ pwd
/
```

Using the `pwd` command to display the current directory

The `pwd` command (short for **P**rint **W**orking **D**irectory) displays your current location within the file system. In the above example, executing `pwd` displays `/` as the current working directory.

Note

Unix, Linux, and BSD systems use a forward slash (i.e. `/`) to separate directory names in contrast to MS-DOS and Windows systems which use a back slash (i.e. `\\`).

Common usage examples:

`pwd` | Display the current working directory.

cd

Purpose: Change (navigate) directories.

Usage syntax: `cd [directory]`

```
$ cd /etc
$ pwd
/etc
```

Using the `cd` command to navigate to the `/etc` directory

The `cd` command (short for **C**hange **D**irectories) changes your location within the file system to the specified path. In the above example, executing `cd /etc` makes `/etc` the new working directory.

The `cd` command interprets directory paths relative to your current location unless you manually specify a full path (such as `cd /etc` as used in the first example.) The next example demonstrates using `cd` to change directories relative to the current location.

```
$ pwd
/home/nick
$ cd documents
$ pwd
/home/nick/documents
```

Using the `cd` command to navigate to a directory relative to the current location

In this example, the starting directory is `/home/nick`. Typing `cd documents` makes `/home/nick/documents` the new working directory. If you were starting in a different location you would have to type the full path (i.e. `cd /home/nick/documents`) to achieve the same results. Since the previous location was `/home/nick`, typing the full path is not necessary.

Tip

Executing the `cd` command with no options returns you to your home directory regardless of your current location.

Common usage examples:

<code>cd [DIRECTORY]</code>	Navigate to the specified directory
<code>cd</code>	Navigate to the user's home directory
<code>cd -</code>	Go back to the previous working directory
<code>cd ..</code>	Navigate up one level in the directory tree

tree

Purpose: Display the contents of a directory in a tree hierarchy format.

Usage syntax: `tree [-a] [-d] [-L NUM] [DIR]`

```
$ cd /
$ tree -d -L 2
/!
..! c !
..! c !
!!! a..! c!
..! de !.?! e b0de !
..! e !
!!! ..! c d !
!!! ..! c !
!!! ..! d b !
!!! ..! e !
!!! ..! e!..?! 0 d0 0 e!
!!! ..! !
//!
..! d!
!!! ..! D L !
!!! ..! O Nb b !
!!! ..! Q d L !
!!! ..! Y2!
!!! ..! bd !
!!! ..! b b!
!!! ..! b b !
//!
```

Tree listing of directory structures

The **tree** command displays a directory listing in tree form. This is useful for visualizing the layout of a directory structure. In the above example, executing **tree -d -L 2** displays 2 directory levels (relative to the current location) in tree form.

Common usage examples:

tree	Display the contents of the current directory in tree form
tree [DIR]	Display the contents of the specified directory in tree form
tree -a	Include hidden files in the tree listing
tree -d	List directories only
tree -L [NUM]	List the specified number of levels deep

find

Purpose: Search for files and directories.

Usage syntax: `find [PATH] [-name NAME] [-user USERNAME] [-size FILESIZE] [-mtime TIME]`

```
# find / -name hosts
0 d0b b 0 !
0 d0 !
0 0 b 0 !
```

Using the find command to locate files with the word "hosts" in their name

The **find** command performs a raw search on a file system to locate the specified items. You can search for files using a number of characteristics - the most common being file name, owner, size, or modification time. The above example displays the results of a search for files that contain the word "hosts" in their file name.

The next example displays the results of a search for files owned by the specified user located within the `/var` directory.

```
# find /var -user nick
0 b 0 b 0 d !
```

Locating files owned by a specific user within the /var directory

Note

*Since the **find** command performs a raw search on the file system, results can sometimes be slow. It's a good idea to narrow your search to a specific location instead of the entire file system. This will produce faster results and not bog down the system while searching.*

Common usage examples:

find [PATH] -name [NAME]

Find files with the specified name

find [PATH] -user [USERNAME]

Find files owned by the specified user

find [PATH] -size [FILESIZE]

Find files larger than the specified size

find [PATH] -mtime 0

Find files modified in the last 24 hours

locate

Purpose: Search the locate database for files and directories.

Usage syntax: `db ! \PQUJPOT^! \EJSFDUPSZ0GJMF^`

```
$ locate hosts
0 d0b b 0 !
0 d0 !
0 0 b 0 !
```

Searching the locate database for files that contain the word "hosts" in their name

The **locate** command displays the location of files that match the specified name. While similar to the **find** command, **locate** is significantly faster because it searches a database of indexed filenames rather than performing a raw search of the entire file system. A disadvantage of the **locate** command is the fact that it lacks the ability to search for advanced characteristics such as file owner, size, and modification time.

Most Linux and BSD systems have implemented **locate** in order to provide a quick method to locate files by name without affecting the performance of the system.

Note

*The **locate** database is updated daily via an automatically scheduled cron job (discussed on page 120) that indexes all local file systems. By default, this usually happens once a day. This means that results are not updated in real-time and newly created or deleted files may not reflect in the results until the next scheduled update.*

Common usage examples:

<code>locate [FILE]</code>	Locate the specified file
<code>locate -i [FILE]</code>	Ignore case when searching

whereis

Purpose: Display the location of binary files, manual pages, and source code for the specified command.

Usage syntax: `whereis [-b | -m | -s] COMMAND`

```
$ whereis ls
ls: /usr/bin/ls /usr/share/man/man1/ls.1.gz
```

Displaying the file locations of the ls program using whereis

whereis displays the file locations for the specified command. In the above example, **whereis** displays the binary file and manual page location for the **ls** command.

Note If the source code is available, **whereis** will also display the location of the source files for the specified command. Source code is not installed by default on most systems.

Tip The **which** command is similar to **whereis** except it only displays results for binary commands. This is useful when you only care to see the path to the binary file for the specified command. For example, typing **which ls** would display the location of binary the file for the **ls** command. See **man which** for more information.

Common usage examples:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| whereis [COMMAND] | Display the location of the specified command |
| whereis -b [COMMAND] | Display binary programs only |
| whereis -m [COMMAND] | Display manual pages only |
| whereis -s [COMMAND] | Display source code only (if available) |

file

Purpose: Display the file type of the specified file.

Usage syntax: `file [FILE]...`

```
$ file /bin/bash
/bin/bash: ELF 64-bit LSB executable, x86_64, version 2.35.0,
e b db ! e! ) ! b e! c *-! ! HOVOM ! 3/7/26-! e!
$ file /etc/passwd
/etc/passwd: ASCII text
$ file /home/nick/backup.tar.gz
/home/nick/backup.tar.gz: gzip compressed data,
33:3:;3:1 311:1
$ file /dev/cdrom
/dev/cdrom: data
$ file /dev/sr0
/dev/sr0: data
```

Using the file command to identify several different types of files

The **file** command displays information about the contents of the specified file. Microsoft Windows systems often use a file extension (such as `.txt`, `.exe`, `.zip`, etc.) to identify the type of data found in a file. Unix, Linux, and BSD files rarely include an extension which can make identifying their file type a challenge. The **file** command is provided to resolve this problem.

The above example displays results for several file types commonly found on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. The table below displays more information about these file types.

Type	Description
Ascii Text Files	Plain text files
Binary Files	Executable programs such as those located in the <code>/bin</code> and <code>/usr/bin</code> directories
Compressed Files	Files compressed through the compress or gzip programs
Device Files	Special virtual files that represent devices
Links	Links (AKA shortcuts) that point to other files or directories

Basic file types found on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems

Common usage examples:

file [FILE] | Display the file type for the specified files

stat

Purpose: Display extended information about a file system, file, or directory.

Usage syntax: `b ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF0EJSFDUPSZ ^`

```
$ stat /etc/hosts
!!G ;!(0 d0 (
!!T ;!377!!!!!! C d ;!9!!!!!!JP!C d ;!51:7!!!! b!
E d ;!916 03164e! J e ;!899!!!!!!M ;!2!
Bdd ;! )17550. . . .*!!V e;! )!!!!10!!!! *!!!H e;! )!!!!10!!!! *!
Bdd ;!311:.16.36!31;58;25/:27737818!.1611!
N e ;!311:.16.36!31;57;68/623734436!.1611!
D b ;!311:.16.36!31;57;68/623734436!.1611!
```

Displaying information for the /etc/hosts file using the stat command

The **stat** command displays extended information about files. It includes helpful information not available when using the **ls** command such as the file's last access time and technical information about the file's location within the file system. The example above displays the **stat** output for the `0 d0 !` file. The next example displays the **stat** output for the `0 d!` directory itself.

```
$ stat /etc
!! G      ;! (0 d(!
!! T      ;! 51:7!!!!!!!!!!!!C d ;! 9!!!!!!!!!!!!JP! C d ;! 51:7!!e d      !
E d      ;! 912 0315:e!!!!!!!!J e ;! 427::4!!!!!!!!M      ;! 86!
Bdd      ;! )18660e . . *!!v e;! )!!!!10!!!! *!!!H e;! )!!!!10!!!! *!
Bdd      ;! 3121.15.12! 23;28;55/11111111! .1611!
N e      ;! 3121.14.39! 23;58;32/11111111! .1611!
D b      ;! 3121.14.39! 23;58;32/11111111! .1611!
```

Displaying stat output for a directory

The **-f** option can be used with **stat** to display information for an entire file system as shown in the next example.

```
$ stat -f /
!! G      ;! #0#
!!!! JE;!  819cd1:8b56c:2:!!Ob      ;! 366!!!! U      ;!      30      4
C d !      ;! 51:7!!!!!! G eb      b ! c d !      ;! 51:7!
C d      ;! U b ;! : : 7648:!!!! G      ;! 834427!!!! B b bc ;! : 332196!
J e      ;! U b ;! 3625:55!!!! G      ;! 3587499!
```

Using the -f option with stat to display information about a file system

Common usage examples:

stat [FILE/DIR]	Display information for the specified file/directory
stat -f [FILESYSTEM]	Display information for the specified file system

date

Purpose: Display or set the system clock.

Usage syntax: `date`

```
$ date
X e! K ! 21! 31;44;38! DEU! 311:!
```

Output of the date command

The **date** command displays the current time and date for the local system, as shown in the above example.

Note *Unix, Linux, and BSD systems track time in 24-hour format.*

The **-s** option can be used to set the time/date on the system as demonstrated in the next example.

```
# date -s "07/10/2009 11:30"
G ! K ! 21! 22;41;11! DEU! 311:!
```

Setting the time and date

When setting both the time and date you must use "**MM/DD/YYYY HH:MM**" format. To set the time only you can simply use **date -s HH:MM**.

Note *You must login as root or use the **sudo** command (discussed on page 90) to set the system clock.*

Common usage examples:

date	Display the time and date
date -s [HH:MM]	Set the time
date -s ["MM/DD/YYYY HH:MM"]	Set the time and date

cal

Purpose: Display a calendar on the command line.

Usage syntax: `cal ! db ! \PQUJPOT^! \NPOUI ^! \ZFBS ^`

```
$ cal
!!!!!!Nb ! 311:!!!!!!
T ! N ! U ! X ! U ! G ! Tb!
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2! 3!
! 4! 5! 6! 7! 8! 9! :!
21! 22! 23! 24! 25! 26! 27!
28! 29! 2:! 31! 32! 33! 34!
35! 36! 37! 38! 39! 3:! 41!
42
```

Displaying a calendar for the current month

The **cal** command displays a simple calendar on the command line. Executing **cal** with no arguments will display a calendar for the current month, as shown in the above example. Adding a month and year as arguments will display a calendar for the specified month and year, as shown in the next example.

```
$ cal 8 2009
!!!! B      ! 311:!
T ! N ! U ! X ! U ! G ! Tb!
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2!
! 3! 4! 5! 6! 7! 8! 9!
! :! 21! 22! 23! 24! 25! 26!
27! 28! 29! 2:! 31! 32! 33!
34! 35! 36! 37! 38! 39! 3:!
41! 42
```

Displaying a calendar for the specified month

Common usage examples:

cal	Display a calendar for the current month
cal -m	Display Monday as the first day of the week
cal [MONTH] [YEAR]	Display a calendar for the specified month and year
cal [YEAR]	Display a calendar for the specified year
cal -y	Display a calendar for the current year

history

Purpose: Display commands that have recently been executed.

Usage syntax: `!
! \PQUJPOT^`

```
$ history 10
!! 797!! b !
!! 798!! db ! 0 d0
!! 799!! !.
!! 79:!!
!! 7:1!! e
!! 7:2!! b
!! 7:3!! b
!! 7:4!! ! /d
!! 7:5!! bd b ! /d
!! 7:6!! ! 21
```

Display 10 lines of command history

The **history** command displays a user's command line history. Executing the **history** command with no arguments will display the entire command line history for the current user. For a shorter list, a number can be specified as an argument. Typing **history 10**, for example, will display the last 10 commands executed by the current user as shown in the above example.

Tip

You can execute a previous command using `! [NUM]` where `OVN` is the line number in history you want to recall. For example, executing `!687` will rerun the command listed on line 687 in the above example.

In Linux, each user has a file called `~/.bash_history` in their home directory that contains their command line history. Unix systems typically store history in a file called `~/.history` or `~/.hists`.

Note

The history file may contain sensitive information about commands you have recently executed. Most systems will automatically overwrite command line history after a certain period. To manually erase the history file in your home directory type `>$HOME/.history` on the command line.

Common usage examples:

history	Display the entire command line history
history [NUM]	Display the specified number of history items
history grep [PATTERN]	Search history for the specified pattern

clear

Purpose: Clear the contents of the current screen.

Usage syntax: `clear`

```
$ ls -la
e . . !! 3! d ! d !! 51: 7! 311: . 16. 2:! 32;25! /!
e . . !: 3! d ! d !! 51: 7! 311: . 16. 2:! 31;57! //!
. . . .!! 2! d ! d ! 46179! 311: . 16. 2:! 19;52! O / !
. . . .!! 2! d ! d !!! 279! 311: . 16. 2:! 32;25! /N I ee G !
. . . .!! 2! d ! d !!!! 34! 311: . 16. 2:! 19;54! T M / !
. . . .!! 2! d ! d !!!! 48! 311: . 16. 2:! 19;54! U E M / !
$ clear
```

Screen contents before the clear command is executed

```
$

!
```

Screen contents after the clear command has been executed

The **clear** command clears the contents of the terminal screen. This is useful for uncluttering the display after you have executed several commands and are preparing to move to the next task. The example above demonstrates the before and after effects of the **clear** command. While clearing the screen after each command isn't necessary, it does make it easier to read the information on the display.

Tip

CTRL + L is a keyboard shortcut to clear the screen in the Bash shell. See Appendix A for more information about Bash shortcut keys.

Common usage examples:

clear | Clear the contents of the screen

logout

Purpose: Log out of the system.

Usage syntax:!

```
$ logout
!  
vc      ! : /15!  
!  
      ;!
```

Results of the logout command

The **logout** command logs your account out of the system. This will end your terminal session and return to the login screen.

Some systems may have a file called `/.logout` or `/cbo.logout` in each user's home directory. This file contains commands to be run during the logout process. It is used to perform cleanup operations and clear the screen before ending the user's session.

Tip

*The **logout** command is the recommended way to exit the shell. For security purposes, users with administrative access should always logout of any open terminal sessions when away from their desk.*

Common usage examples:

logout | Log out of the system

exit

Purpose: Exit the current shell.

Usage syntax: `exit` `!` `\DPEF^`

```
$ exit
!  
;!
```

Example output of the exit command

The **exit** command is similar to the **logout** command with the exception that it does not run the **logout** script located in the user's home directory. The above example shows the results of exiting the shell and returning to the login prompt.

Shell scripts typically use the **exit** command to properly terminate while users use the **logout** command to properly log out of a system. The exception to this rule is when a terminal application is opened from within a graphical environment on the local system. The **logout** command cannot be used in this situation because terminal session is started as sub shell under the graphical environment. Most systems will display an error in this case as shown in the next example.

```
$ logout
cb ;! ;! ! ! ;! ! # #!
```

Logout error message

Tip

CTRL + D is a keyboard shortcut for exiting the shell. See Appendix A for more information on shortcut keys.

Common usage examples:

exit	Exit the current shell
exit [CODE]	Exit the shell and report an exit code (useful in shell scripting)

Section 3:

Advanced Shell Features and Commands

Overview

This chapter discusses advanced commands for Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. Advanced commands can be used to perform tasks such as copying, moving, renaming, and deleting files. It will also cover advanced shell features like auto completion, wildcards, pipes, and redirection.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
mv	Move or rename files and directories.
cp	Copy files and directories.
rm	Remove files.
mkdir rmdir	Create/remove directories.
touch	Update time stamps on a file.
lsof	List open files.
fuser	Display information about open files.
cksum	Display the checksum of a file.
md5sum	Display the MD5 hash of a file.
ln	Create links (shortcuts) to files or directories.
alias	Create command line aliases.
gzip gunzip	Compress/uncompress files.
split	Split large files into multiple pieces.
shred	Securely erase files.
watch	Periodically execute the specified command.
env	Display environment variables.

Glossary of terms used in this section:

Alias	A shortcut for a command.
Append	Add data to the end of a file instead of overwriting its contents.
Checksum	A data integrity verification algorithm.
Compression	A process used to reduce the size of files.
Interactive	Display confirmation prompts before executing a task.
Link	A shortcut to a file or directory.
MD5 Sum	An enhanced data integrity verification algorithm.
Parent Directory	Higher level directory that contains the current directory.
Pipe	A command line facility that connects the output of one command to the input of another.
Redirection	Command line facilities used to redirect the input or output of a command.
Variable	Adjustable program/environment settings stored in memory.
Verbose	Extended output from a command.
Wildcards	Symbols used to match text patterns.

Auto-Completion

Most shells support command line completion. Command line completion is used to have the shell automatically complete commands or file paths. Command line completion is activated using the **Tab** key on most systems and shown in the following example.

```
$ whe<TAB>
$ whereis
```

Using command line completion

In the above example typing **whe** and pressing the **Tab** key automatically completes the command **whereis** without having to type the entire command.

Auto-completion also works on file paths. Typing **ls -l /etc/en** and pressing the **Tab** key would auto-complete to the file! 0 d0 as shown in the next example.

```
$ ls -l /etc/en<TAB>
$ ls -l /etc/environment
```

Command line completion of file names

When more than one match is found, the shell will display all matching results. In the next example, typing **ls -l /etc/host** and pressing **Tab** displays all matching files in the! 0 d! directory.

```
$ ls -l /etc/host<TAB>
/d  !!!!  b  !!!!!  !!!!!!!!!  /b  !!  /e  !
```

Displaying multiple matches using file name completion

Tip

*In addition to command line completion, some shells offer the ability to recall previously executed commands by using the **Up Arrow** key on the keyboard.*

Wildcards

Wildcards are used to pattern match one against one or more text elements. They are helpful on the command line for performing bulk tasks such as listing or removing groups of files. The table below lists the different types of wildcards that can be used on the command line.

Wildcard	Function
*	Matches 0 or more characters
?	Matches 1 character
[abc]	Matches one of the characters listed
[a-c]	Matches one character in the range
[!abc]	Matches any character not listed
[!a-c]	Matches any character not listed in the range
{tacos,nachos}	Matches one word in the list

Types of wildcards

The asterisk (*) is the simplest and most helpful wildcard. The example below demonstrates using the asterisk wildcard to display all files that match a file name.

```
$ ls -l /etc/host*
. . . .! 2!    !    !!:3! 3119.23.34! 23;64! 0    d0    /d    !
. . . .! 2!    !    !!! 7! 311:.15.34! 26;61! 0    d0    b    !
. . . .! 2!    !    ! 362! 311:.16.33! 25;66! 0    d0    !
. . . .! 2!    !    ! 68:! 311:.15.31! 1; ;25! 0    d0    /b    !
. . . .! 2!    !    ! 989! 311:.15.31! 1; ;25! 0    d0    /e    !
```

Listing files using the asterisk wildcard

Typing `ls -l /etc/host*` lists all the files in the `/etc/host` directory that start with the word `host`. Other examples of wildcards are demonstrated below.

```
$ ls -l /etc/hosts.{allow,deny}
. . . .! 2!    !    ! 68:! 311:.15.31! 1; ;25! 0    d0    /b    !
. . . .! 2!    !    ! 989! 311:.15.31! 1; ;25! 0    d0    /e    !
$ ls -l /etc/hosts.[!a]*
. . . .! 2!    !    ! 989! 311:.15.31! 1; ;25! 0    d0    /e    !
$ ls -l /etc/host?
. . . .! 2!    !    ! 362! 311:.16.33! 25;66! 0    d0    !
```

Examples of other wildcards

In this example, the first command uses `{allow,deny}` to display all matches that end with the word `allow` or `deny`. The second command uses `[!a]*` to display matches that do not begin with the letter `a` (after the period). The third example uses the `?` wildcard to match only a single character.

Pipes

Pipes (also referred to as pipelines) can be used to direct the output of one command to the input of another. Pipes are executed using the `|` key (usually located above the backslash key) on the keyboard.

```
$ ls -l /etc | more
```

```
  b ! : 79!  
. . . . .! 2! ! !!!!! 3:86! 3119.19.29! 24;41! bee /d !  
. . . . .! 2! ! !!!!!!! 55! 3121.15.17! 27;6:! be !  
. . . . .! 2! ! !!!!!!! 62! 3119.19.29! 24;5:! b b !  
. . . . .! 2! ! !!!!! 23399! 311:.19.39! 24;4:! b b /ec!  
e . . ! 3! ! !!!!! 51:7! 3121.15.16! 21;6:! b b !  
e . . ! 8! ! !!!!! 51:7! 3121.15.16! 21;6:! b bd 3!  
e . . ! 4! ! !!!!! 51:7! 3119.19.29! 24;59! b !  
e . . ! 3! ! !!!!! 51:7! 311:.19.39! 24;4:! b b !  
e . . ! 7! ! !!!!! 51:7! 3119.19.29! 24;58! b b /e!  
e . . ! 5! ! !!!!! 51:7! 3121.12.36! 24;55! b !  
. . . . .! 2! ! eb !!!!! 255! 3118.13.31! 18;52! b /e !  
. . . . .! 2! ! !!!!! 2844! 3119.16.23! 24;44! cb /cb d!  
. . . . .! 2! ! !!!!! 32763:! 3119.15.25! 31;56! cb `d !  
e . . ! 3! ! !!!!! 51:7! 3121.15.16! 21;6:! cb `d /e!  
;!
```

Using pipes on the command line

Using `ls -l` on the `/etc` directory would normally rapidly scroll the contents of the directory across the screen. Piping the output of `ls -l` to the `more` command (discussed on page 70) displays the contents of the `/etc` directory one page at a time.

Another command commonly used with pipes is `grep` (discussed on page 75). The `grep` utility can be used to filter the output of a command or file and display matching results. The next example demonstrates piping the output of the `ls` command to `grep` to filter the results and display matches that contain the word `hosts`.

```
$ ls -l /etc | grep host
```

```
. . . . .! 2! ! !!!!!!! 3! 3118.21.31! 17;62! /d !  
. . . . .! 2! ! !!!!!!! 3! 3119.19.2! 26;3:! b !  
. . . . .! 2! ! !!!!!!! 411! 311:.23.18! 1:;2:! !  
. . . . .! 2! ! !!!!!!! 68! 3119.19.29! 24;41! /b !  
. . . . .! 2! ! !!!!!!! 989! 3119.19.29! 24;41! /e !
```

Using a pipe with the `grep` command to filter a command's output

Note

Pipes are extremely useful when working on the command line. From this point on they will be appearing frequently in examples.

Redirection

The output of a command can be redirected to other locations such as a text file. Redirection is initiated by using the `>` character on the keyboard.

```
$ date > date.txt
$ ls -l date.txt
. . . .! 2! d! d! 3: 311: .17. 21! 22;48! eb / !
```

Redirecting the output of the `date` command to a file

In the above example, the `date` command's output is redirected to a file called `eb / !` instead of being displayed on the screen. If the specified file does not exist it will automatically be created. If it does exist, it will be overwritten. To prevent overwriting a file you can use `>>` to append to the file as shown in the next example.

```
$ date >> date.txt
```

Appending the output of a command to a file

There are two different types of output:

1. Standard output (STDOUT)
2. Error output (STDERR)

STDOUT and *STDERR* can be selectively directed to specific files. This is useful when trying to capture error messages as demonstrated below.

```
$ ls -l /NonExistantFile 1>ls.txt 2>lserror.txt
$ ls -l ls*
. . . .! 2! d! d! 72! 311: .17. 21! 22;57! / !
. . . .! 2! d! d! 1! 311: .17. 21! 22;57! / !
```

Selectively redirecting *STDOUT* and *STDERR*

In this example, `1>` represents *STDOUT* and `2>` is for *STDERR*. Since the requested file does not exist, an error message is logged in the `lserror.txt` file. All non-error output is saved in the `ls.txt` file.

In addition to *STDOUT* and *STDERR* you can also redirect input from another location (such as a file) to a command. This is known as standard input or *STDIN*. The next example demonstrates using *STDIN* to feed the contents of a file to the `mail` command (discussed on page 162).

```
$ mail grepnick@gmail.com < ShoppingList.txt
```

Redirecting input from a file to a command

mv

Purpose: Move or rename files and directories.

Usage syntax: `mv [-i, -f] [-t DIRECTORY] SOURCE...`

```
$ ls -l
. . . . . 2! d! d!!!! 66! 311:..16.31! 26;43! N G !
$ mv MyFile MyFile.old
$ ls -l
. . . . . 2! d! d!!!! 66! 311:..16.31! 26;43! N G / e!
```

Using the mv command to rename a file

The **mv** command moves or renames files. In the above example, `MyFile` is renamed to `MyFile.old` using the **mv** command. In the next example, `MyFile` is moved to the `/tmp/` directory.

```
$ mv MyFile.old /tmp/
$ ls -l /tmp/
. . . . . 2! d! d!!!! 66! 311:..16.31! 26;43! N G / e!
```

Moving a file to a different directory

The **mv** command can also be used to move or rename directories. In the example below, the `NewFiles` directory is renamed to `OldFiles`.

```
$ ls -ld NewFiles/
e . . . . . 3! d! d! 51:7! 311:..17.39! 24;34! O G 0
$ mv NewFiles/ OldFiles/
$ ls -ld OldFiles/
e . . . . . 3! d! d! 51:7! 311:..17.39! 24;34! P eG 0!
```

Moving an entire directory

Warning

The default behavior the **mv** command will overwrite any existing file(s). The **-i** option overrides this behavior and prompts the user before overwriting the destination file.

Common usage examples:

mv [SOURCE] [DEST]	Move a file or directory to the specified location
mv -i [SOURCE] [DEST]	Prompt before overwriting the destination file
mv -f [SOURCE] [DEST]	Force overwriting if the destination file exists

cp

Purpose: Copy files and directories.

Usage syntax: ! d ! \PQUJPOT^! \TPVSDF^! \EFTUJOBUIJPO^

```
$ cp MyFile MyFile.copy
$ ls -l
```

```

. . . .! 2! d ! d !!!!! 66! 311:.. 16. 31! 26;43! N G !
. . . .! 2! d ! d !!!!! 66! 311:.. 16. 31! 26;43! N G /d !

```

Creating a copy of a file

The **cp** command copies files and directories. In the above example, `! N G !` is copied to create the `! N G /d !` file.

The next example demonstrates using `cp -r` to recursively copy the contents of a directory.

```
$ ls -l
e . . !3! ! !!!!! 51:7! K !! 2! 25;17! N E d !
$ cp -r MyDocuments/ MyDocuments2/
$ ls -l
e . . !3! ! !!!!! 51:7! K !! 2! 25;17! N E d !
e . . !3! ! !!!!! 51:7! K !! 2! 25;17! N E d 3!
```

Using the -r option with cp to recursively copy a directory

After executing the `cp -r` command an exact copy of the specified directory is created.

Warning

The default behavior the `cp` command will overwrite any existing file(s). The `-i` option overrides this behavior and prompts the user before overwriting the destination file.

Common usage examples:

cp [SOURCE] [DEST]

Create a copy of the specified file

```
cp -r [SOURCE] [DEST]
```

Recursively copy a directory

```
cp -i [SOURCE] [DEST]
```

Prompt before overwriting the destination file

cp -f [SOURCE] [DEST]

Force overwriting if the destination file exists

cp -v [SOURCE] [DEST]

Display verbose messages while copying

rm

Purpose: Remove files.

Usage syntax: `rm [FILE]...`

```
$ rm MyFile
$ ls -l MyFile
-rw-r--r-- 1 db bdd 1000 2023-01-01 12:00 ! N G
```

Using the rm command to remove a file

The **rm** command removes files. In the above example, the **rm** command is used to remove `! N G`. After executing the **rm** command, `! N G` is deleted from the disk and no longer accessible.

Notice that no warning is given when the file is removed. This is the default behavior of **rm** on most systems. To change this, use the **-i** option as demonstrated in the next example. This will instruct the system to prompt you to verify you want to remove the file.

```
$ rm -i MyFile
rm: remove regular file 'MyFile'? y
```

Using the -i option with the rm command for interactive prompts

Tip

You can use the **alias** command (see page 53) to make **rm -i** the default remove action. This is highly recommended as it helps prevent accidental disasters when deleting files.

Common usage examples:

rm [FILE]	Remove the specified file
rm -r [DIRECTORY]	Recursively remove all items in the specified directory
rm -i [FILE]	Prompt to confirm the removal of the specified file

mkdir / rmdir

Purpose: Create/remove directories.

Usage syntax: mkdir [-m] [-p] [-v] [-Z] [-ZPOT^] [-EJSFDUPSZ^] [-t] [-f] [-R] [-d] [-h] [-j] [-k] [-l] [-n] [-o] [-s] [-u] [-x] [-y] [-z] [-Z] [-ZPOT^] [-EJSFDUPSZ^] [-t] [-f] [-R] [-d] [-h] [-j] [-k] [-l] [-n] [-o] [-s] [-u] [-x] [-y] [-z]

```
# mkdir test
# ls -ld test/
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 4096 Jan 1 12:11 test
```

Creating a directory with mkdir

The **mkdir** command creates directories. The above example demonstrates creating a directory called **test**. Notice the permissions section of the **ls** output contains a **drwxr-xr-x** prefix. This indicates that the item is a directory.

Tip

Use **mkdir "my directory"** or **mkdir my\ directory** to create a directory with a space in its name.

The **rmdir** command removes directories. In the next example, the **rmdir** command is used to remove the previously created **test** directory.

Usage syntax: rmdir [-v] [-Z] [-ZPOT^] [-EJSFDUPSZ^] [-t] [-f] [-R] [-d] [-h] [-j] [-k] [-l] [-n] [-o] [-s] [-u] [-x] [-y] [-z]

```
$ rmdir test/
$ ls -ld test/
ls: cannot access 'test/': No such file or directory
```

Removing a directory using rmdir

Note

rmdir will only remove empty directories. To remove a non-empty directory, use **rm -r [DIRECTORY]** in place of the **rmdir** command.

Common usage examples:

mkdir [DIRECTORY]	Create the specified directory
mkdir -p [PATH/DIRECTORY]	Create parent directories if needed
rmdir [DIRECTORY]	Remove the specified directory

touch

Purpose: Update time stamps on a file.

Usage syntax: `d ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
$ ls -l testfile
. . . ..! 2!      !      ! 362! 311:..15.32! 26;61!
$ touch testfile
$ ls -l testfile
. . . ..! 2!      !      ! 362! 311:..16.34! 25;65!
$ date
Tb !Nb ! 34! 25;65;46! DEU 311:!
```

Using the touch command to update the time stamp on a file

The **touch** command updates the time stamps on the specified file(s). Notice the timestamp on the file in the above example is updated to match the current time and date after executing the **touch** command.

If the file does not exist, the **touch** command will create an empty file with the specified file name, as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ ls -l MyFile
-rw-r--r-- 1 db bdd 1 N G 1 O 1 d 1 1 e d
$ touch MyFile
$ ls -l MyFile
-rw-r--r-- 1 2 d 1 1 311:..16.34 25;65 N G 1
```

Creating a new empty file with the the touch command

Common usage examples:

touch [FILE]	Update the time stamp on the specified file
touch -a [FILE]	Update the access time stamp on the specified file
touch -m [FILE]	Update the modified time stamp on the specified file

lsnf

Purpose: List open files.

Usage syntax: `lsnf [FILE] [USER] [PID] [PROCESSNAME]`

```
# lsnf /etc/hosts
DPNNBOE!!! QJE!!! VTFS!!! GE!!! UZQF! EFWJDF! TJ[ F!!!! OPEF! OBNF!
b !!!!! 238:4!!! d!!!! 4 !!! SFH!!!! 9-2!!! 367! 2888787! 0 d0 !
```

Using the lsnf command to display information about an open file

The `lsnf` command displays information about open files. Executing the `lsnf` command with no arguments will display all open files on the system. Specifying the name of an open file will display information about who is using the file. In the example above, `lsnf` displays which user is using the `0 d0 !` file along with other helpful information such as the command name and PID number.

The `-u` option allows you to see all files open by the specified user as displayed in the next example.

```
# lsnf -u nick
DPNNBOE!!! QJE!!! VTFS!!! GE!!! UZQF! EFWJDF! !!! TJ[ F!!!! OPEF! OBNF!
e! !!! 289:!!!! d !! d e! !!! EJS!!!! 9-2!!!! 51: 7!!!!!! 3! 0!
e! !!! 289:!!!! d !! e! !!! EJS!!!! 9-2!!!! 51: 7!!!!!! 3! 0!
b !!!!! 238:4!!! d!!!! 4 !!! SFH!!!! 9-2!!!! 367! 2888787! 0 d0 !
e! !!! 289:!!!! d!!!! 1 !!! DIS!!!! 2-4!!!!!!!!!!!! 6929! 0e 0 !
e! !!! 289:!!!! d!!!! 2 !!! DIS!!!! 2-4!!!!!!!!!!!! 6929! 0e 0 !
e! !!! 289:!!!! d!!!! 3 !!! DIS!!!! 2-4!!!!!!!!!!!! 6929! 0e 0 !
//^
```

Using the lsnf command to display files opened by a specific user

Common usage examples:

<code>lsnf</code>	List all open files
<code>lsnf [FILE]</code>	List information about a specific file
<code>lsnf -u [USERNAME]</code>	List files open by the specified user
<code>lsnf -p [PID]</code>	List open files by the specified PID number
<code>lsnf -c [PROCESSNAME]</code>	List open files with the specified process name
<code>lsnf -i</code>	List open network ports and sockets

fuser

Purpose: Display information about open files.

Usage syntax: `fuser [-v] [-ki] FILE`

```
$ fuser -v /home/nick/ShoppingList.txt
39639d) d *!
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! VTFS!!!!!!!! QJE! BDDFTT! DPNNBOE!
T      M    /    ;!!!! d!!!! 25155! //d/! b !
```

Displaying information about open files with fuser

fuser is a helpful program for identifying the person or program that is using a file. In the example above the **fuser** command displays the user, process id, and command currently using the `T M / ;!!!!` file.

The **-ki** option can be used with the **fuser** command to terminate the process currently using the specified file as shown in the next example.

```
$ fuser -ki /home/nick/ShoppingList.txt
0      0  d 0T      M    /    ;!!!!!!!!!!!! 25155!!!
L      !  d      ! 25155! @! ) 00*! y!
```

Using the -ki option with fuser to terminate the processes using a file

Note

Section 6 of this guide covers processes in more detail.

Common usage examples:

fuser [FILE]	Display processes using the specified file
fuser -v [FILE]	Display detailed information about the file in use
fuser -ki [FILE]	Kill all processes using the specified file

cksum

Purpose: Display the checksum of a file.

Usage syntax: `! d ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
$ cksum ubuntu.iso
```

43232::916! 841665479! c / !

Displaying the checksum of a large file

The **cksum** command displays the checksum of the specified file. It is typically used to verify the integrity of files transferred across a network connection. In the above example, the checksum for a downloaded Ubuntu Linux CD image is displayed. The resulting checksum can be compared to the checksum from the original file to ensure it arrived without errors.

The table below describes the output fields of the **cksum** command.

Checksum	File Size	File Name
43232::916!	841665479!	c / !

Output fields of the cksum command

Tip

Multiple files can be analyzed with one invocation of the **cksum** command using the following syntax: **cksum [FILE1] [FILE2] [FILE3] [ETC]**.

Common usage examples:

cksum [FILE]	Display the checksum of the specified file(s)
------------------------------	---

md5sum

Purpose: Display the MD5 hash of a file.

Usage syntax: `md5sum [options] file`

```
$ md5sum ubuntu.iso
dbd7b:ee9ed269285456bbc4b!!c / !
```

Displaying the md5 hash of the file

ln

Purpose: Create links (shortcuts) to files or directories.

Usage syntax: ! \PQUJPOT^! \UBSHFU^! \MJOL^

```
$ ln -s TheSourceFile ThisIsTheLink
$ ls -l
. . . .! 2! d! d! 25! 311!..16.34! 21;27! U T d G !
! 2! d! d! 24! 311!..16.34! 21;29! U J U M !.?! U T d G !
```

Creating a link to a file using the ln command

The **ln** command creates links to files or directories. A link is the command line equivalent of a shortcut. In the above example, a link to a file called! U T d G ! is created. Notice the link in the above example has an! ! prefix in the permissions section. This indicates that the file is a link.

The default operation of the `ln` command on most systems creates what is known as a hard link. Hard links have two major limitations:

1. Hard links cannot refer to directories
2. Hard links cannot span multiple file systems/disks

Symbolic links are more commonly used today to overcome the shortfalls of hard links. They are created when using the `-s` option with the `ln` command. This is the recommended way to create a link as it will not suffer from the same limitations of a hard link.

Note

Editing a symbolic link file is the same as editing the source file, but deleting the symbolic link does not delete the source file.

Common usage examples:

```
ln [SOURCE] [TARGET]
```

Create a hard link to the specified target

```
ln -s [SOURCE] [TARGET]
```

Create a symbolic link to the specified target

alias

Purpose: Create command line aliases.

Usage syntax: `alias [name]='command'`

```
$ alias rm="rm -i"
$ rm TestFile
```

Creating a command alias

The **alias** command creates command line aliases. This allows you to abbreviate a long command string to something simple. In the above example, the **rm** command is aliased to be **rm -i** so that every time the **rm** command is executed the **-i** option is automatically included (without having to type it).

Executing **alias** with no arguments will display all currently defined aliases, as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ alias
alias rm='rm -i'
```

Displaying all defined aliases

Tip

Aliases are lost when you log out. The **unalias** command can be used to delete aliases without having to logoff. To make an alias permanent you must add it to `~/.bashrc` or `~/.profile` file in the user's home directory.

Common usage examples:

alias	Display defined aliases
alias [NAME]=" [COMMAND] "	Create an alias for the specified command

gzip / gunzip

Purpose: Compress/uncompress files.

Usage syntax: `gzip [-f] [-v] [-n] [-q] [-t] [-l] [-1] [-c] [-d] [-S suffix] [-k] [-h] [-m] [-w window] [-b bits] [-f] [-v] [-n] [-q] [-t] [-l] [-1] [-c] [-d] [-S suffix] [-k] [-h] [-m] [-w window] [-b bits] file...`

```
# ls -lh BigFile
. . . .! 2!      !      ! 4/1N! 3121.16.31! 25;13! C   G   !
# gzip BigFile
# ls -lh BigFile.gz
. . . .! 2!      !      ! 544L! 3121.16.31! 25;13! C   G   /   !
```

Using gzip to compress a file

gzip is a simple compression utility found on most Linux and BSD systems. In the above example **gzip** is used to reduce the size of the `C G` file by compressing it into a `/` archive.

The **gunzip** (or **gzip -d**) command uncompresses **gzip** archives as demonstrated in the next example.

Usage syntax: `gunzip [-f] [-v] [-n] [-q] [-t] [-l] [-1] [-c] [-d] [-S suffix] [-k] [-h] [-m] [-w window] [-b bits] file...`

```
$ gunzip BigFile.gz
# ls -lh BigFile
. . . .! 2!      !      ! 4/1N! 3121.16.31! 25;13! C   G   !
```

Uncompressing a file with gunzip

Note

*On older Unix systems the **compress** and **uncompress** commands are used in place of **gzip** and **gunzip**. Compressed files on these systems will usually have a **.Z** file extension in place of **.gz**.*

Common usage examples:

gzip [FILE]	Compress the specified file
gzip --fast [FILE]	Compress the specified file using the fastest method
gzip --best [FILE]	Compress the file using the highest compression level
gzip -tv [ARCHIVE]	Test the specified archive for errors
gzip -l [ARCHIVE]	Display information about the specified archive file
gunzip [ARCHIVE]	Uncompress the specified archive
gzip -d [ARCHIVE]	Uncompress the specified archive

split

Purpose: Split large files into multiple pieces.

Usage syntax: `split [-l | -b SIZE] FILE OUTPUT`

```
$ ls -l ubuntu.iso
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 782797767 311..21.38! 23;18! c .:/21/ !
$ split -d -b 100M ubuntu.iso ubuntu.iso.
$ ls -lh ubuntu*
-rw-r--r-- 1 root 752N! 311..21.38! 23;18! c .:/21/ !
-rw-r--r-- 1 root 211N! 3121.15.22! 22;55! c / /11!
-rw-r--r-- 1 root 211N! 3121.15.22! 22;55! c / /12!
-rw-r--r-- 1 root 211N! 3121.15.22! 22;55! c / /13!
-rw-r--r-- 1 root 211N! 3121.15.22! 22;55! c / /14!
-rw-r--r-- 1 root 211N! 3121.15.22! 22;55! c / /15!
-rw-r--r-- 1 root 211N! 3121.15.22! 22;55! c / /16!
-rw-r--r-- 1 root 52N! 3121.15.22! 22;55! c / /17!
```

Using the split command to split a large file into multiple pieces

The **split** command splits large files into multiple pieces. The above example demonstrates splitting the large! c / ! file into several 100MB pieces (as specified by the **-b 100M** parameter). In this example, the **split** command will create the required number of 100MB files with an incrementing extension.

Note

The original file is left in place when creating split files.

The **cat** command (discussed on page 67) can be used to rejoin the split files as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ cat ubuntu.iso.* > ubuntu-joined.iso
$ ls -lh *.iso
-rw-r--r-- 1 root 752N! 311..21.38! 23;18! c .:/21/ !
-rw-r--r-- 1 root 752N! 3121.15.22! 22;58! c . e/ !
```

Combining split files using the cat command

Tip

You can use the **cksum** or **md5sum** command to verify the joined file is the same as the original.

Common usage examples:

<code>split -b [SIZE] [FILE] [OUTPUT]</code>	Split a file into multiple pieces
<code>split -d -b [SIZE] [FILE] [OUTPUT]</code>	Use numeric suffixes

shred

Purpose: Securely erase files.

Usage syntax: `shred [-u] [-n NUM] [-v] FILE`

```
$ shred -u SecretPlans.txt
$ ls -l SecretPlans.txt
-rw-r--r-- 1 user group 1000 2021-01-01 12:00 SecretPlans.txt
```

Using the shred command to securely overwrite a file

The **shred** command securely overwrites (and optionally deletes) files. In the above example, executing **shred -u** securely overwrites and removes the `SecretPlans.txt` file from the disk.

The default operation of the **shred** command overwrites the specified file with 3 passes of random data. The **-n** option can be used to specify a custom number of overwrite iterations as displayed in the next example.

```
$ shred -n 10 -v SecretPlans.txt
e;T d Q b / ; b ! 2021! ) b e *///!
e;T d Q b / ; b ! 3021! ) b e *///!
e;T d Q b / ; b ! 4021! )111111*///!
e;T d Q b / ; b ! 5021! )444444*///!
e;T d Q b / ; b ! 6021! )666666*///!
e;T d Q b / ; b ! 7021! ) b e *///!
e;T d Q b / ; b ! 8021! )bbbbbb*///!
e;T d Q b / ; b ! 9021! ):35:35*///!
e;T d Q b / ; b ! :021! )5:35:3*///!
e;T d Q b / ; b ! 21021! ) b e *///!
```

Specifying a number of overwrite iterations

Note

The **-v** option is applied in the above example to verbosely display the progress of the **shred** command.

Common usage examples:

shred [FILE]	Shred the specified file
shred -u [FILE]	Shred and delete the specified file
shred -zu [FILE]	Attempt to hide evidence of file shredding
shred -v [FILE]	Display the progress of each pass
shred -n [NUM] [FILE]	Perform the specified number of overwrite passes

watch

Purpose: Periodically execute the specified command.

Usage syntax: `! b d ! \PQUJPOT^! \DPNNBOE^`

```
$ watch -n 10 who
```

```
F      ! 21/1 ;!      !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! Tb ! Nb ! 34! 22;11;2:! 311;!
      !!!!!    2!!!!!!!! 311:.16.3! 21;35!
      !!!!!    3!!!!!!!! 311:.16.3! 21;55!
d !!!!!    4!!!!!!!! 311:.16.3! 23;31!
```

Executing the who command every 10 seconds using watch

watch periodically runs the specified command. It is a helpful program for monitoring the output of a command over a period of time. In the above example, **watch -n 10** is used to execute the **who** command (discussed on page 93) every 10 seconds.

If the **-n** option is omitted **watch** will execute the specified command with a two second interval.

Tip

Press **CTRL + C** on your keyboard to end monitoring and exit the **watch** program.

Common usage examples:

watch [COMMAND]

```
watch -n [NUM] [COMMAND]
```

```
watch -b [COMMAND]
```

```
watch -d [COMMAND]
```

Run the specified command every 2 seconds

Run a command at the specified interval

Beep if the command exits with an error

Highlight differences between updates

env

Purpose: Display environment variables.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^`

```
$ env
UFSN>      !
TIFMM>0c  0cb  !
VTFS>  d !
QBUI>0    0  db 0 c  ;0    0  db 0c  ;0    0 c  ;0    0c  ;0 c  ;0c  ;!
MBOH>  `VT/VUG. 9!
IPNF>0    0  d !
//!
```

Output of the env command

The **env** command displays your defined environment variables. These variables hold information for common account settings like the location of a user's home directory and the type of shell they use by default.

The following table describes the most common environment variables used on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems.

Variable	Function
EDITOR	Specifies the user's preferred text editor
HISTFILE	Location of the user's command line history file
HISTFILESIZE	Specifies the number of commands to save in HISTFILE
HOME	Path to the user's home directory
LANG	Specifies the user's language locale settings
MAIL	Path to the user's mail file
PATH	Path to search for binary programs
PS1	Customized shell prompt settings
SHELL	Location of the user's shell
TERM	Specifies the type of terminal being used
USER	User's username

Common environment variables used on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems

Common usage examples:

env | Display all defined environment variables

Section 4:

Text Editing and Extraction

Overview

Extracting and editing text is an important part of working on the command line. Text editors and utilities are commonly used for administrative purposes such as changing settings in configuration files or viewing system log files. This chapter provides a basic overview of working with text editing and extraction programs for Unix, Linux, and BSD systems.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
nano	Simple text editor.
vi/vim	Full featured text editor.
emacs	Robust and extensible text editor.
sed	Complex stream editor.
awk	Text processing and pattern matching program.
strings	Extract readable characters from binary files.
cat	Concatenate files and display their contents.
tac	Concatenate files in reverse order.
wc	Count the number of lines, words, and characters in a file.
more	Display the output of a command or text file one page at a time.
less	Display the output of a command or text file one page (or line) at a time.
head	Display the first part of a file.
tail	Display the last part of a file.
tee	Display the output of a command and write the output to a file.
grep	Match patterns and filter data.
sort	Sort the contents of an input stream or file.
zcat	Read the contents of a compressed file.
diff	Compare files.
dostounix unixtodos	Convert text file formats between Windows/DOS and Unix/Linux systems.

Glossary of terms used in this section:

Editor	A program used to create/edit text documents.
Concatenate	Process used to join files.
Regular Expression	A complex pattern matching language.
Stream	A channel of data to/from another program or file.

nano

Purpose: Simple text editor.

Usage syntax: `! b ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
$ nano ShoppingList.txt
!!HOV! b !3/1/:!!!!!!!!!!!!!!G  ;!0  0 d 0T      M  /  !!!
N  !
F  !
D  !
Ubd !
!
!
!
^G Get Help  ^O WriteOut  ^R Read File  ^Y Prev Page  ^K Cut Text   ^C Cur Pos
^X Exit      ^J Justify    ^W Where Is   ^V Next Page  ^U UnCut Text ^T To Spell!
```

Editing a text file with nano

nano is a simple editor found on most Linux and BSD systems. It is the recommended editor for new users. Nano's functions such as searching, saving, and closing files are controlled using function keys. The basic functions are listed at the bottom of the **nano** screen. For example, pressing **CTRL + O** saves the changes to a file and **CTRL + X** exits the **nano** editor. Other functions are described in the following table.

Keys	Function	Keys	Function
CTRL + O	Save	CTRL + X	Exit
CTRL + G	Help	ESC + X	Toggle menu display
Page Up	Previous page	Page Down	Next Page
ESC + D	Display word count	CTRL + C	Display current position
CTRL + K	Cut current line	ESC + 6	Copy current line
CTRL + U	Paste	CTRL + \	Find and replace
CTRL + W	Search	CTRL + -	Go to line
CTRL + A	Go to beginning of line	CTRL + E	Go to end of line
ESC + \	Go to first line of the file	ESC + /	Go to last line of the file

Function keys for the nano editor

Note

On some systems the **pico** editor may be used in place of **nano**.

Common usage examples:

- nano** [FILE]
- Open the specified file for editing
- nano -v** [FILE]
- Open the specified file in read only mode

vi / vim

Purpose: Full featured text editor.

Usage syntax: `vi [FILE]`

```
$ vim ShoppingList.txt
N      !
F      !
D      !
Ubd    !
!
!
!
!
!
!
#0      0      d 0T      M      /      #! 5!      -! 2:! d b bd      !
```

Using vi to edit a text file

The **vi** editor (also known as **vim**) is a complex and full featured text editor for Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. Traditional Unix systems typically utilize **vi** as the default text editor. Modern Linux and BSD systems use **vim** which is an enhanced version of **vi**.

The **vi** and **vim** editors have two basic modes of operation: *command mode* and *editing mode*. Pressing **Esc** on the keyboard activates command mode. When in command mode, command keys can be used to activate specific editing functions. The following table lists the most common commands for **vi** and **vim**.

Key(s)	Function	Key(s)	Function
:w	Save	A	Append text after
:x	Save and exit	r	Replace text before cursor
:q	Quit	R	Replace text after cursor
i	Insert text before	yy	Copy current line
I	Insert text after	p	Paste copied text
a	Append text before	/ [TEXT]	Search for the specified text

Command keys for vi and vim

Common usage examples:

vi [FILE]	Open the specified file for editing in vi
vim [FILE]	Open the specified file for editing in vim
view [FILE]	Open the specified file in read only mode

emacs

Purpose: Robust and extensible text editor.

Usage syntax: bd ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^

```
$ emacs ShoppingList.txt
G ! Fe ! P ! C ! U ! I !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
N !
F !
D !
Ubd !
!
!
!
!
!
!
!
.. .;&.G2!! T M / ! )G eb b *.M23..U .....!
C ! ! be. ;! $=c ! d ?!
```

Editing a text file with emacs

emacs is one of the oldest text editors still in use today on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. Its programmable macros and code syntax highlighting make it a popular choice for software developers and web programmers. The screenshot above displays the emacs editor user interface.

Note

emacs is an incredibly powerful editor geared towards advanced users, software developers, and publishers. New users should focus on learning the **nano** and **vi** editors before attempting to master **emacs**.

Common usage examples:

emacs [FILE] | Open the specified file for editing.

sed

Purpose: Complex stream editor.

Usage syntax: `sed -e '\PQUJPOT^' \GJMF^`

```
$ cat ShoppingList.txt
N    !
F    !
D    !
Ubd  !
$ sed s/Tacos/Nachos/ ShoppingList.txt > NewShoppingList.txt
$ cat NewShoppingList.txt
N    !
F    !
D    !
Obd  !
```

Using the sed command to replace text in a file

sed is a complex stream editor. It uses regular expressions to modify data streamed to it. Regular expressions are a pattern matching language supported on all Unix, Linux, and BSD systems.

In the above example, the **sed** command reads the contents of the `ShoppingList.txt` file and uses a regular expression to replace all instances of the word *Tacos* with *Nachos*. The results are output to a new file called `NewShoppingList.txt`.

Note

Regular expressions are complex and can't be fully covered in this book. Visit www.DontFearTheCommandLine.com to find resources for learning more about regular expressions syntax.

Common usage examples:

sed [OPTIONS] [EXPRESSION] [FILE] | Edit a file using sed

awk

Purpose: Text processing and pattern matching program.

Usage syntax: `! b ! \FYQSFTTJPO^`

```
$ ls -l ShoppingList.*
. . . .! 2! d! d! 35! 3121.15.23! 34;21! T M / e!
. . . .! 2! d! d! 34! 3121.15.23! 2:;44! T M / !
$ ls -l ShoppingList.* | awk -F" " '{ print $1 " " $8 }'
. . . .! T M / e!
. . . .! T M / !
```

Modifying the output of the ls command using the awk command

awk is a pattern matching and text processing utility. It treats each line of input as a series of fields. The fields in each line are grouped into an array and assigned a variable related to their position. In the above example, **awk** is used to extract and print the first and eighth (**\$1** and **\$8**) fields from the output of the **ls** command.

The **awk** command can also be used to perform batch processing functions such as renaming multiple files as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ ls
G 2!! G 4!! G 6!! G 8!! G :!
G 3!! G 5!! G 7!! G 9!
$ ls | awk '{print "mv \"$1\" \"$1\".txt\"}' | sh
$ ls
G 2/ !! G 4/ !! G 6/ !! G 8/ !! G :/ !
G 3/ !! G 5/ !! G 7/ !! G 9/ !
```

Batch renaming files using the awk command

In this example the **awk** command is used to rename the listed files by appending `a! / !` extension to them.

Note

awk is a powerful and complex utility that can't be fully covered in this book. Visit www.DontFearTheCommandLine.com to find resources for learning more about awk usage syntax.

Common usage examples:

`[INPUT] | awk [EXPRESSION]` | Process input using the awk command

cat

Purpose: Concatenate files and display their contents.

Usage syntax: `cat [FILE]...`

```
$ cat ShoppingList.txt
N !
F !
D !
Ubd !
```

Output of the cat command

The **cat** command concatenates and displays files. Executing **cat** on the **ShoppingList.txt** file displays its contents as shown in the above example.

To join two or more files, simply provide the file names to be concatenated separated by a space as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ cat ShoppingList.txt NachoIngredients.txt
N !
F !
D !
Ubd !
3! d ! b d-! d e!
7! ! -! d e-! ! b ! b e! ! b b e!
2! d ! b b!
203! )23! d *! bd b ! bd d !
2! )9! d *! bd b ! ee e! D eeb 0N ! Kbd ! d ! c e!
203! b ! b -! e d e!
```

Joining two files using the cat command

Common usage examples:

cat [FILE]

tac

Purpose: Concatenate files in reverse order.

Usage syntax: `bd! \GJMF^`

```
$ cat ShoppingList.txt
N  !
F  !
D  !
Ubd !
$ tac ShoppingList.txt
Ubd !
D  !
F  !
N  !
```

Comparison of the output from the `cat` and `tac` commands

The **tac** command is similar to the previously discussed **cat** command, except it displays a file's contents in reverse order. In the above example, the output of the **cat** command is compared to the **tac** command to demonstrate the differences between the output generated by these two commands.

Tip

tac is extremely useful when reviewing the contents of log files on Unix, Linux, BSD systems. The newest entries in log files are always appended to the end of the file. **tac** allows you to read these files in reverse order displaying the most recent entries first.

Common usage examples:

tac [FILE] | Display the contents of the specified file in reverse order

wc

Purpose: Count the number of lines, words, and characters in a file.

Usage syntax: `! d! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
$ wc /etc/hosts
! 21! 39! 362! 0 d0
```

Output of the wc command

The **wc** command (short for **W**ord **C**ount) displays the total number of lines, words, and characters in the specified file. The above example displays the totals for the `! 0 d0 !` file. The table below explains the output fields generated by the **wc** command.

Lines	Words	Characters	File
21!	39!	362!	0 d0 !

Output fields of the wc command

Common usage examples:

- `wc [FILE]`

`wc -w [FILE]`

`wc -l [FILE]`

`wc -c [FILE]`

Display the number of lines, words, and characters in a file

Display the number of words in a file

Display the number of lines in a file

Display the number of characters in a file

more

Purpose: Display the output of a command or text file one page at a time.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
$ more /var/log/syslog
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! O      Nb b      ;!!!! TDQ      . J      e      ;! )2:6::759*!
//!      `d      d      ! ) b b      e> b      *;!      !      !      /!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! M      d      !
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! P      !
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! N      D!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! P      ! I      . T      e!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! H      d!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! H c      !
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! O      b!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! O      b      !
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! B      Eb b!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! I      b      !
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! [ UF!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! T      b!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e      . b b      ;! M be e!      ! F      d      ! NCN!
..N      .. )25&*!
```

Viewing a text file with the more command

The **more** command displays the output of a command or text file one page at a time. This is useful for large files or commands that generate many lines of output. The above example demonstrates using the **more** command to read a large text file one page at a time.

Tip

*The space bar is used to scroll output using **more**. The **Q** key closes the file without having to scroll to the end.*

Common usage examples:

more [FILE]	Display the specified file one page at a time
more +[NUM] [FILE]	Start reading a file at the specified line number
[COMMAND] more	Display a command's output one page at a time

less

Purpose: Display the output of a command or text file one page (or line) at a time.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^!`

```
$ less /var/log/syslog
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! O      Nb b      ;!!!! TDQ      . J      e      ;! )2:6::759*!
//!      `d      d      ! ) b b      e> b      *;!      !      !      /!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! M      d      !
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! P      !
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! N      D!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! P      ! I      . T      e!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! H      d!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! H c !
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! O      b!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! O      b      !
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! B      Eb b!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! I      b      !
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! [ UF!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! T      b!
Nb ! 3! 22;5; ;26! 7511! e . b b      ;! M be e!      ! F      d      ! NCN!
;!
```

Viewing a text file with the less command

The **less** command is similar to the previously discussed **more** command except it supports scrolling in both directions (up and down) where **more** can only go down.

Tip

*The arrow keys and **Page Up/Down** keys are used to scroll output using **less**. The **Q** key closes the file without having to scroll to the end.*

Common usage examples:

<code>less [FILE]</code>	Display the specified file one page at a time
<code>less +[NUM] [FILE]</code>	Start reading a file at the specified line number
<code>[COMMAND] less</code>	Display a command's output one page at a time

head

Purpose: Display the first part of a file.

Usage syntax: `be! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
$ head -n 2 ShoppingList.txt
N  !
F  !
```

Using the head command to display the first two lines of a file

The **head** command displays the first few lines (known as the *head*) of the specified file. In the above example, the **-n 2** option is used to display only the first two lines of the specified file. If the **head** command is executed with no options it will display the first 10 lines in the file by default.

Common usage examples:

head [FILE]

Display the first 10 lines of the specified file

head -n [NUM] [FILE]

Display the specified number of lines

tail

Purpose: Display the last part of a file.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
$ tail -n 2 ShoppingList.txt
D      !
Ubd    !
```

Displaying the last two lines in a file with tail

The **tail** command displays the last few lines (known as the *tail*) of the specified file. In the above example, the **-n 2** option is used to display only the last two lines of the specified file. If the **tail** command is executed with no options it will display the last 10 lines in the file by default.

Another useful feature of the **tail** command is the **-f** option which is used to "follow" a file as it grows. This instructs the **tail** command to open the specified file and display new lines as they are written to it. The next example demonstrates using the **tail -f** command to monitor new log entries in real-time in the `/var/log/syslog` file.

```
# tail -f /var/log/syslog
Nb ! 33! 24;52;61! 7511! O      Nb b      ;! =      ?!! )      b 1*;!      db !
d      d      !      b      ;!! d      el .?!      !      b e      b !
Nb ! 33! 24;52;61! 7511! O      Nb b      ;! =      ?!! )      b 1*;!      db !
d      d      !      b      ;!!      !      b e      b ! .?! d      e!
Nb ! 33! 24;52;62! 7511!      b`      db      \959^;! XQB;! FBQPM.L      ! S      b !
D      ! e e!      !      d b      ! .! e      !      bd      !
Nb ! 33! 24;52;62! 7511!      b`      db      \959^;! XQB;! J      b      e! FBQPM.L      ! NJD! .!
e      !      bd      !
Nb ! 33! 24;53;26! 7511!      b`      db      \959^;!      b      !      b      !      b      e! 7!
!
Nb ! 33! 24;56;24! 7511! b bd      \23:1^;! K c! (d      /eb      (!      b      e!
Nb ! 33! 24;56;24! 7511! b bd      \3278^;! V eb      e!      b      !      !      c!
(d      /eb      (!      ! 3121.16.33!
//!
```

Using the tail command to monitor a growing log file in real time

Common usage examples:

tail [FILE]	Display the last 10 lines of the specified file
tail -n [NUM] [FILE]	Display the specified number of lines
tail -f [FILE]	Follow the file as it grows

tee

Purpose: Display the output of a command and write the output to a file.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
$ ls -l /etc/ | tee etc.txt
. . . .! 2! ! !!!!! 3:86! 311:. 13. 15! 22;23! bee /d !
. . . .! 2! ! !!!!!!! 57! 3121. 17. 38! 27;64! be !
. . . .! 2! ! !!!!!!! 643! 311:. 22. 41! 25;44! b b !
. . . .! 2! ! !!!!! 23399! 3121. 18. 12! 23;34! b b /ec!
e . . ! 3! ! !!!!! 51: 7! 3121. 16. 15! 24;35! b b !
e . . ! 5! ! !!!!! 51: 7! 311:. 14. 23! 25;19! b b !
e . . ! 4! ! !!!!! 51: 7! 311:. 13. 15! 23;5:! b !
e . . ! 3! ! !!!!! 51: 7! 311:. 19. 39! 25;56! b b !
e . . ! 7! ! !!!!! 51: 7! 3121. 17. 38! 27;64! b b /e!
//!
```

Using the tee command to capture the output of a command

The **tee** command displays the output of a command and also saves the output to a file. In the above example, the **tee** command displays the output of the **ls -l /etc** command while simultaneously saving the results to a file called `etc.txt`. Viewing the `etc.txt` file shows its contents are the same as the output displayed on the command line, as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ more etc.txt
. . . .! 2! ! !!!!! 3:86! 311:. 13. 15! 22;23! bee /d !
. . . .! 2! ! !!!!!!! 57! 3121. 17. 38! 27;64! be !
. . . .! 2! ! !!!!!!! 643! 311:. 22. 41! 25;44! b b !
. . . .! 2! ! !!!!! 23399! 3121. 18. 12! 23;34! b b /ec!
e . . ! 3! ! !!!!! 51: 7! 3121. 16. 15! 24;35! b b !
e . . ! 5! ! !!!!! 51: 7! 311:. 14. 23! 25;19! b b !
e . . ! 4! ! !!!!! 51: 7! 311:. 13. 15! 23;5:! b !
e . . ! 3! ! !!!!! 51: 7! 311:. 19. 39! 25;56! b b !
e . . ! 7! ! !!!!! 51: 7! 3121. 17. 38! 27;64! b b /e!
//!
```

Viewing the contents of the output file created by the tee command

Common usage examples:

<code>[COMMAND] tee [FILE]</code>	Save a command's output to a file
<code>[COMMAND] tee -a [FILE]</code>	Append the output to the specified file

grep

Purpose: Match patterns and filter data.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^!`

```
$ grep -i failed /var/log/syslog
B !! 5! 18;63;55! ;! \1/111111^! Gb ! UTD! db c b ! b e!
B !! 5! 18;63;55! ;! \2/698881^! QN;! S ! ! e ! b e!/
B !! 5! 18;63;55! ;! \7/363628^! QN;! S ! ! e ! b e!/
B ! 22! 23;22;39! ;! V bc ! ! d d ! ! ! ! c ;! Gb e! !
d d ! ! d ! 0 b 0 0ec 0 `c ` d ;! D d ! e!
//^
```

Using the `grep` command to filter a file

The `grep` command filters data from a file or command. In the above example, `grep` is used to filter the `! 0 b 0 0 !` file and display matches that contain the word *failed*.

Tip

Unix, Linux, and BSD systems are case sensitive. In the above example, the `-i` option is used to overcome this and perform a case insensitive search.

The `grep` command can also be used to filter the output of a command. In the next example the output of the `dmesg` command (discussed on page 215) is piped to the `grep` command to only display results that contain the word *error*.

```
$ dmesg | grep -i error
\27185/5117:3^! QN;! E d ! 3.4! b e! ! ;! !.2:!
\318:3/535648^! /c \31155^;! b ! b ! :c b3d! !
11111111 :c b3d! ! 11111111 db618d! ! 25!
\32412/718:99^! /c \3533: ^;! b ! b ! :c b3d! !
11111111 :c b3d! ! 11111111 94b51d! ! 25!
//^
```

Using the `grep` command to filter a command's output

Common usage examples:

<code>grep [STRING] [FILE]</code>	Display matching lines in a file
<code>grep -c [STRING] [FILE]</code>	Count the number of matches in a file
<code>grep -i [STRING] [FILE]</code>	Ignore case when matching
<code>[COMMAND] grep [STRING]</code>	Filter a command's output to match a string

sort

Purpose: Sort the contents of an input stream or file.

Usage syntax: ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^

```
$ cat ShoppingList.txt
N      !
F      !
D      !
Ubd    !
$ sort ShoppingList.txt
D      !
F      !
N      !
Ubd    !
```

Using the sort command to sort a file

The **sort** command sorts the contents command or file. In the above example, the **sort** command is used to alphabetically sort the! T M / ! file and display the results.

sort can also be used with pipes to sort the output of a command as shown in the next example.

```
$ ls | sort
bd !
bee /d !
be !
b b !
b b /ec!
b b!
b b !
b bd bc!
b bd 3!
//!
```

Using the sort command to sort the output of a command

Common usage examples:

sort [FILE]	Sort and display the specified file
sort -r [FILE]	Reverse sort the specified file
[COMMAND] sort	Sort the output of the specified command

zcat

Purpose: Read the contents of a compressed file.

Usage syntax: `zcat FILE`

```
$ file ShoppingList.txt.gz
ShoppingList.txt.gz: gzip compressed data
$ zcat ShoppingList.txt.gz
N
F
D
Ubd
```

Viewing the contents of a compressed text file with the zcat command

The **zcat** command allows you to read the contents of a compressed text file without having to manually uncompress it first. In the above example the `ShoppingList.txt.gz` file is a compressed **gzip** archive. Using the traditional **cat** command would produce unreadable output in this scenario. The **zcat** command, however, allows you to view the contents of the file without having to first uncompress it.

Common usage examples:

zcat [FILE] | Read the contents of a compressed file

diff

Purpose: Compare files.

Usage syntax: ! e ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^!

```
$ diff ShoppingList.txt ShoppingList.old
5d5
!= Ubd  !
...!
?! Obd
```

Default output of the diff command

The **diff** command allows you to compare two text files line by line and display the differences between them. The **diff** command provides two types of output:

1. Single column (default)
2. Two column side-by-side comparison (activated with the `-y` option)

In the above example the **diff** command displays the default single column output which only shows the differences between the two files. Indicators are used to mark the differing lines:

< Indicates the text in the first file

- > Indicates the text in the second file

The `-y` option can be used to display two column side-by-side output. The next example demonstrates the output generated with this option.

[illegible]

Comparing two files with the diff command

Common usage examples:

```
diff [FILE1] [FILE2] | Compare files and display differences
```

```
diff -y [FILE1] [FILE2] | Compare files side by side
```

```
diff -i [FILE1] [FILE2] | Ignore case when comparing files
```

dos2unix / unix2dos

Purpose: Convert file formats between Windows/MS-DOS and Unix/Linux systems.

Usage syntax: `! e 3 ! 0! 3e ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
$ cat ShoppingList.txt
N _N!
F _N!
D _N!
Ubd !
$ dos2unix ShoppingList.txt
$ cat ShoppingList.txt
N !
F !
D !
Ubd !
```

Converting a Windows-formatted text file to a Unix-formatted file

Text files created in Windows and MS-DOS are formatted with line feed characters that are not compatible with Unix/Linux systems. The **dos2unix** command reformats the specified file so that it will display properly on Unix/Linux systems. In the above example, the line feed characters in the `T M / !` file are converted so they will display properly on Unix-based systems.

Similar to the **dos2unix** command, **unix2dos** formats text files created on Unix/Linux systems so they can be displayed properly when transferred to Windows systems.

Tip

*Conversions are done directly to the specified file. Use the **-b** option to create a backup of the file before converting.*

Common usage examples:

dos2unix [FILE]	Convert a Windows text file to a Unix-formatted file
dos2unix -b [FILE]	Create a backup before converting
unix2dos [FILE]	Convert a Unix text file to a Windows-formatted file
unix2dos -b [FILE]	Create a backup before converting the file

Section 5:

Users, Groups, and Security

Overview

This chapter covers the most common commands related to users, groups, and security. It will also discuss topics like account creation/deletion, file and directory permissions, and other user/security related commands.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
chmod	Change file and directory permissions.
chown	Change the owner of a file or directory.
chgrp	Change the group of files and directories.
umask	Display/set a user's default file creation mask.
su	Switch user accounts.
sudo	Run a single command as a different user.
id	Display information about a user's identity.
groups	Display which groups a user belongs to.
who	Display who is logged into the system.
whoami	Display the current user's identity
w	Display detailed information about users logged in to the system.
last lastb	Display the last successful/failed user logins.
lastlog	Display the most recent user login information.
finger	Display information a about user account.
passwd	Change passwords.
useradd userdel	Create/delete user accounts.
adduser deluser	Create/delete user accounts on Linux systems.
groupadd groupdel	Add/remove a group.

(Continued...)

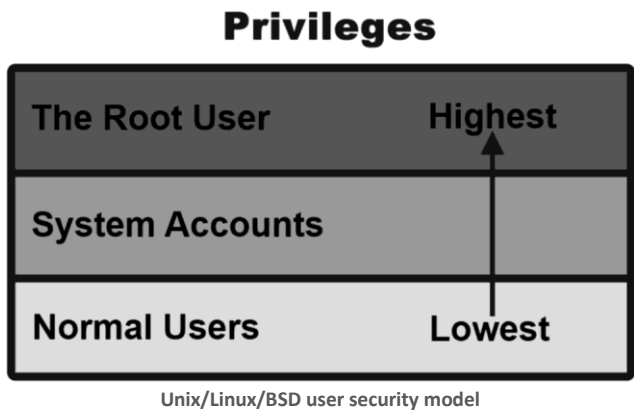
Command	Purpose
<code>usermod</code> <code>groupmod</code>	Modify user and group account settings.
<code>wall</code>	Broadcast a message to all users on the system.
<code>ulimit</code>	Display/set system resource limits.

Glossary of terms used in this section:

GID	(Group IDentifier) A numerical value assigned to a group in the <code>/etc/passwd</code> file.
Group	A grouping of user accounts used to simplify security and access control.
Mode	Indicator of permissions for files and directories.
Octal Notation	A numerical value used to apply permissions to files and directories.
Permissions	Settings used to control access to a file or directory.
Profile	Collection of settings assigned to a user.
Symbolic Notation	A user friendly way to display or apply permissions to files and directories.
UID	(User IDentifier) A numerical value assigned to a user account in the <code>/etc/passwd</code> file.
User Account	An account assigned to each person with login access to the local system.

Types of Accounts

There are several types of user accounts used on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. The graphic below illustrates the user security model used on most systems.



By default, normal users and the programs they execute are given the least amount of privileges on the system. System accounts have slightly elevated privileges and are used to run system services (like a web server or FTP server). The root account has unrestricted administrative access to the entire system.

Groups

Groups are used to simplify the management of system security. Users can be a member of one or more groups. All users are part of at least one group by default; this group is known as the user's primary group.

File and Directory Permissions

File and directory permissions are managed using a set of nine "flags". The following example describes permissions found on a typical file.

-	rwx			r-x			r-x		
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
File Type	User (Owner)			Group			Other (Everyone)		

Within these nine flags, three sets of permissions are specified:

- User (AKA owner) permissions
- Group permissions
- Other (i.e. everyone else)

There are four types of permissions that can be used to control access to a file or directory. The following table describes each permission.

Symbolic	Meaning
r	Read
w	Write
x	Execute
-	No access

Example of directory permissions

In most cases, the owner of a file will always have full read/write access to that file. Execute permission is a special flag used for programs, scripts, and directories to indicate they are executable.

The example below displays basic file permissions.

```
$ ls -l ShoppingList.txt
-rw-r--r-- 1 user group 1024 Jan 1 12:34 ShoppingList.txt
```

Output of the ls -l command displaying file permissions

	User	Group	Other
Symbolic	rw-	r--	r--
Meaning	Read & Write	Read only	Read only

Example of file permissions

The next example demonstrates directory permissions. Directory permissions work the same as file permissions except they are used to control access to directories.

```
$ ls -ld finance/
drwxr-xr-x 2 user group 4096 Jan 1 12:34 finance/
```

Output of the ls -ld command displaying directory permissions

	User	Group	Other
Symbolic	rwX	r-X	---
Meaning	Read, Write, & Execute	Read only & Execute	No Access

Example of directory permissions

Each file and directory has its own set of permissions. Permissions are not inherited from the parent directory. Additionally, directories require execute permission in order to be accessible, as shown in the previous example.

chmod

Purpose: Change file and directory permissions.

Usage syntax: d e! \PQUJPOT^! \NPEF^! \EJSFDUPSZ0GJMF^

```
# chmod 664 ShoppingList.txt
# ls -l ShoppingList.txt
```

. . . ! 2! ! ! 34! 311: . 16. 38! 33; 42! T M / !

Using the chmod command to change file permissions

The **chmod** command sets permissions on files and directories. By default, permissions are specified in numerical (octal) format such as 664 as shown in the above example. In octal form, three digits are used to represent owner, group, and everyone else's permissions. The first number represents the owner's permissions, the second number is the group's permissions, and the third number is for everyone else.

The table below provides a cross reference of symbolic and octal permissions.

Permission	Symbolic	Octal
Read	!	4
Write	!	2
Execute	!	1
None	. !	0

Permissions cross reference

The sum of the octal permissions becomes what is known as the *mode*.

The concept of permissions on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems can be hard to grasp as first. Several additional examples are provided below to help clarify this topic.

Example 1: A mode of 660 would provide read/write access to the owner and group and no access to everyone else.

```
# chmod 660 MyFile
# ls -l MyFile
. . . . . ! 2!      ! b  ! 34! 311:.16.38! 33;42! N G  !
```

Result of a 660 mode

Example 2: A mode of 755 would provide full access to the owner and read/execute access for the group and everyone else.

```
# chmod 755 MyProgram.sh
# ls -l MyProgram.sh
. . . . . ! 2!      ! b  ! 34! 311:.16.38! 33;42! N Q    b /  !
```

Result of a 755 mode

Example 3: A mode of 600 would provide read/write access to the owner and no access to everyone else.

```
# chmod 600 MyFile
# ls -l MyFile
. . . . . ! 2!      ! b  ! 34! 311:.16.38! 33;42! N G  !
```

Result of a 600 mode

Example 4: A mode of 775 applied to a directory would provide read/write/execute access to the owner and group and read only access to everyone else.

```
$ chmod 775 MyDirectory
$ ls -ld test
e . . . . . ! 3!      ! b  ! 51;7! 311:.16.38! 27;15! N E    d  !
```

Result of a 775 mode applied to a directory

Common usage examples:

<code>chmod [MODE] [FILE]</code>	Change the permissions on the specified file
<code>chmod [MODE] -R [DIR]</code>	Recursively change the permissions on all files

chown

Purpose: Change the owner of a file or directory.

Usage syntax: `! d ! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS;HSPVQ^! \EJSFDUPSZ0GJMF^`

```
# ls -l ShoppingList.txt
. . . ..! 2! d ! d ! 34! 311:.16.38! 33;42! T M / !
# chown root ShoppingList.txt
# ls -l ShoppingList.txt
. . . ..! 2! ! d ! 34! 311:.16.38! 33;42! T M / !
```

Using the `chown` command to change the owner of a file

The **chown** command changes the owner of a file or directory. In the above example, the owner of the `T M / !` file is changed from *nick* to *root*.

The next example demonstrates changing both the owner and group of a file using the **chown** command.

```
# ls -l ShoppingList.txt
. . . ..! 2! ! d ! 34! 311:.16.38! 33;42! T M /
# chown nick:sales ShoppingList.txt
# ls -l ShoppingList.txt
. . . ..! 2! d ! b ! 34! 311:.16.38! 33;42! T M / !
```

Using the `chown` command to change the owner and group of a file

After executing the `chown nick:sales ShoppingList.txt` command, the `T M / !` file is updated with the owner of *nick* and the group of *sales*.

Tip

You can use the **chgrp** command (discussed on page 87) if you only need to change the group of a file.

Common usage examples:

<code>chown [USER] [FILE]</code>	Change the owner of a file
<code>chown [USER] : [GROUP] [FILE]</code>	Change the owner and group of a file
<code>chown -R [USER] [DIR]</code>	Recursively change the owner on all files in the specified directory

chgrp

Purpose: Change the group of files and directories.

Usage syntax: ! d ! \PQUJPOT^! \HSPVQ^! \EJSFDUPSZ0GJMF^

```
# ls -l ShoppingList.txt
. . . . ! 2!      !      !! 34! 311:.16.38! 33;42! T      M      /      !
# chgrp sales ShoppingList.txt
# ls -l ShoppingList.txt
. . . . ! 2!      !      b      ! 34! 311:.16.38! 33;42! T      M      /      !
```

Using the chgrp command to change the group of a file

The **chgrp** command changes the group of a file or directory. In the above example the **chgrp** command is used to change the group from *root* to *sales* on the `/tmp/! file`.

Common usage examples:

chgrp [GROUP] [FILE]	Change a file's group to the specified group
chgrp -R [DIR]	Recursively change the group on all files

umask

Purpose: Display/set a user's default file creation mask.

Usage syntax: `umask [-b | -S] [MODE]`

```
$ umask
133
```

Displaying the current user's umask

umask controls a user's default file creation mask. This determines the permissions that will be assigned to newly created files and directories. To determine the file/directory creation mode the umask value is subtracted from 777 for directories and 666 for files. For example, a umask of 022 would create effective permissions of 644 (`-rw-r--r--`) for files and 755 (`-rwxr-xr-x`) for directories.

On some systems the `-S` option can be used to display a more user friendly symbolic output of the umask value, as shown in the next example.

```
$ umask -S
> -> -> !
```

Displaying the umask in symbolic notation

The **umask** command can also be used to change the umask value as displayed in the next example.

```
$ umask 077
```

Setting the umask value

In this example, a umask value of 077 would create effective permissions of 600 (`-rw-r--r--`) for files and 700 (`-rwxr-xr-x`) for directories.

Note

A umask value specified on the command line is reset when you log out. To make the umask permanent you must add it to the `~/.profile` file in the user's home directory or `~/.bashrc` file (for all users).

Common usage examples:

<code>umask</code>	Display the umask in octal format
<code>umask -S</code>	Display the umask in symbolic format
<code>umask [MODE]</code>	Set the umask to the specified value

SU

Purpose: Switch user accounts.

Usage syntax: ! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS ^

```
$ whoami
d !
$ su
Qb e;! ++++++!
# whoami
!
```

Using the su command to switch from a normal user to the root user

The **su** command (short for **Switch User**) allows you to login as another user without having to first log out of the system. In the above example **su** is used by a normal user to switch to the root user account. Notice that when you become the root user your shell prompt changes from **\$** to **#**. As the root user you can now run commands that require elevated privileges.

Tip

You should always limit the amount of time you spend logged in as the root user. This is a good practice that can help reduce accidents.

By default, executing **su** with no arguments switches to the root user account. A user name can be specified with **su** to become a different user as shown in the next example.

```
$ whoami
d !
$ su steve
Qb e;! ++++++!
$ whoami
!
```

Using su to switch to another user

Common usage examples:

su	Switch to the root user account
su -	Switch to the root user account and load root's profile
su [USERNAME]	Switch to the specified username

sudo

Purpose: Run a single command as a different user.

Usage syntax: `sudo [options] command`

```
$ whoami
d !
$ sudo whoami
\ e ^! b e! ! d ;! ++++++!
!
$ whoami
d !
```

Using sudo to run a command as the root user

The **sudo** command allows you to run a single command as another user. It is most commonly used to execute commands that require root privileges. In this example **whoami** is executed as root via the **sudo** command.

Using the **sudo** command is the recommended way to run commands that require elevated privileges as it limits the amount of time spent with root privileges. This greatly helps prevent disasters such as accidental deletion of important system files.

Note

User (or group) accounts must be listed in the `/etc/sudoers` file in order to execute commands as root with **sudo**.

Common usage examples:

sudo [COMMAND]	Run the specified command as root
sudo -u [USER] [COMMAND]	Run a command as the specified user
sudo !!	Run the last command as root

id

Purpose: Display information about a user's identity.

Usage syntax: `! e! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS ^`

```
# id
e>1 )      *!  e>1 )      *!      >1 )      *!
```

Displaying user and group information for the current user

The `id` command displays user and group information for the specified user. Executing `id` with no options displays the current user's information as displayed in the above example. The next example demonstrates using the `id` command to display information about a specific user.

```
# id nick
e>2111) d *!  e>2111) d *!      >5)be *-! 31)e b      *-35)de      *-!
57)      e      *-! 217)  be      *-! 232)be      *-! 233) b c b  b      *-! 2111) d *!
```

Displaying user and group information for a specific user

Note

Unix, Linux, and BSD systems assign a numerical **UID (User ID)** and **GID (Group ID)** for each user and group on the system. A user friendly name is also assigned to each UID and GID which is displayed in parenthesis next to each ID number. This information is stored in! 0 d0 b e! for users and! 0 d0 ! for groups.

Common usage examples:

- id
- id [USER]
- Display the current user's ID information
- Display user and group information for the specified user

groups

Purpose: Display which groups a user belongs to.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS ^!`

```
# groups
!
```

Displaying group information for the current user

The **groups** command displays a user's group membership. Executing **groups** with no options displays the current user's groups, as shown in the above example. A user name can be used with the **groups** command to display the specified user's group membership as shown in the next example.

```
# groups nick
d ! be ! e b      ! de      !      e !      be      ! be      ! b c b      b      !
```

Displaying group information for the specified user

Common usage examples:

- | | | |
|----------------------|--|---|
| groups | | Display the current user's group membership |
| groups [USER] | | Display group membership for the specified user |

who / whoami

Purpose: Display who is logged into the system.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^`

```
$ who
!!!! 3!!!!!!! 3121.16.28! 22;43!
d!!!! 2!!!!!!! 3121.16.28! 22;42!
d!!!! 0!!!!!!! 3121.16.28! 19;51! )21/21/2/362*!
eb!!!! 02!!!!!!! 3121.16.28! 23;43! )21/21/2/299*!
!!!! 03!!!!!!! 3121.16.28! 25;39! )21/21/2/278*!
b!!!! 04!!!!!!! 3121.16.28! 25;61! )21/21/2/315*!
d!!!! 05!!!!!!! 3121.16.28! 26;44! )21/21/2/362*!
```

Output of the who command

The **who** command displays information about users currently logged in to the system. The default output of the **who** command displays the username, terminal ID, and date/time the user logged in as shown in the above example.

Note

Users logged in via telnet or SSH sessions will also display the IP address of the remote client in parentheses.

The **whoami** command displays the username of the current user. This is helpful to verify which user's environment and security privileges are available when switching between different accounts.

Usage syntax: `b`

```
$ whoami
d !
```

Using whoami to display the name of the current user

Common usage examples:

who	Display who is currently logged into the system
who -b	Display the last system boot time
who -r	Display the current run level
whoami	Display the name of the current user

w

Purpose: Display detailed information about users logged in to the system.

Usage syntax: `! ! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS^`

```
$ w
! 26;4:;23!  ! 5! eb  -!! 7;1:-!! 6!      -!!  be! b  b  ;! 1/17-! 1/16-! 1/12!
VTFS! !!! UUZ! !!!!!! GSPN! !!!!!! MPHJOA!! JEMF!!! KDQV!! QDQV! XIBU!
  d !!!!! 01!!!! 21/21/2/362!!!!!! 19;51!!!! 2;21!!!! 1/29 !! 1/26 !.cb  !
eb  !!!!! 02!!!! 21/21/2/299!!!!!! 23;43!!!! 1/11 !!! 1/25 !! 1/25 !  !
  !!!!! 03!!!! 21/21/2/278!!!!!! 25;39!!!! 1/11 !!! 1/23 !! 1/23 !  b  !
  b!!!!! 04!!!! 21/21/2/315!!!!!! 25;61!!!! :/11 !!! 1/25 !! 1/25 !.cb  !
  d !!!!! 05!!!! 21/21/2/362!!!!!! 26;44!!!! 1/11 !!! 1/26 !! 1/12 !  !
```

Output of the w command

The **w** command shows detailed information about users logged into the system. It is similar to the previously discussed **who** command except it provides additional information such as the user's last login time, how long they have been idle, and what program they are currently running.

The **w** command also displays a system summary line that shows the host's uptime, number of connected users, and samples of system load averages for the past 1, 5, and 15 minutes.

Tip

*The information displayed on the first line is the same output generated by the **uptime** command. See page 214 for more information about system uptime and load averages.*

Common usage examples:

w | Display detailed information about users currently logged in to the system

last / lastb

Purpose: Display the last successful/failed user logins.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS ^`

```
$ last
d !!!!! 02!!!!!!! 2:3/279/2/61!! Tb !Nb ! 33! 24;53!! ! e! !
d !!!!! 01!!!!!!! 2:3/279/2/61!! Tb !Nb ! 33! 24;51!! ! e! !
d !!!!! 8!!!!!!! ;1!!!!!!! Tb !Nb ! 33! 24;51!! ! e! !
c !!! !c !! 3/7/43.32. !! Tb !Nb ! 33! 24;51! .! 25;13!! )11;32*!
d !!!!! 01!!!!!!! ;1/1!!!!!!! U !Nb ! 31! 32;44! .! 32;47!! )11;14*!
d !!!!! 01!!!!!!! ;1/1!!!!!!! U !Nb ! 31! 32;41! .! 32;44!! )11;13*!
!!!! 01!!!!!!! ;1/1!!!!!!! U !Nb ! 31! 32;38! .! 32;41!! )11;14*!
d !!!!! 8!!!!!!! ;1!!!!!!! U !Nb ! 31! 32;36! .! d b ! )2,27;25*!
//^
```

Output of the last command

The **last** command displays the login and logout times for each user on the system. It also shows information about system shutdowns and restarts as shown in the above example.

The **lastb** command displays failed login attempts and shown in the next example.

Usage syntax: `b c! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS ^`

```
$ lastb
d !!!!! 2!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! Tb !Nb ! 3! 24;6;.! 24;6;!! )11;11*!
d !!!!! 2!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! U !Nb ! 3! 32;38! .! 32;38;! )11;11*!
!!!!!! 2!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! U !Nb ! 3! 26;38! .! 26;38;! )11;11*!

!
c ! c ! Tb !Nb ! 3! 24;6; ;39! 3121!
```

Output of the lastb command

Note

User login/logout activity is stored in the `0 b 0 0` file. Failed login attempts are logged in `0 b 0 0c`.

Common usage examples:

last	Display the last user login information
last -[NUMBER]	Display the specified number of logins
last [USER]	Display the last logins for the specified user
lastb	Display failed login attempts
lastb -[NUMBER]	Display the specified number of failed login attempts
lastb [USER]	Display failed login attempts for the specified user

lastlog

Purpose: Display the most recent user login information.

Usage syntax: `! b ! \PQUJPOT^`

[illegible]

Output of the lastlog command

The **lastlog** command displays the most recent user login time and dates for every user on the system. Executing **lastlog** with no options displays the last login information for all users, as shown in the above example. This output is similar to the **last** command except **lastlog** only displays the most current login activity where **last** displays all available login events.

The `-u` option can be used to display the last login for a specific user as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ lastlog -u nick
V      b !!!!!!! Q      !!!!! G      !!!!!!! Mb      !
      d !!!!!!! 01!!!! 21/21/2/362!! Tb ! Nb ! 4! 22;42;62! .161! 311:!
```

Displaying the last login for a specific user

Common usage examples:

lastlog	Display the last login information for all users
lastlog -u [USER]	Display the last login information for the specified user

finger

Purpose: Display information about a user account.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS ^`

```
$ finger nick
M      ;!  d!!!!!!!!!!!!!!          !          Ob  ;!O d!Nb  !
E  d    ;!0    0  d!!!!!!!!!!!!!!T    ;! 0c  0cb  !
P  !    d! Tb!Nb! 4! 22;43! )DEU*!  !    3!!! 2!          ! 43!  d  e!  e  !
O  !  b  !  d    e! N  !Nb! 28! 27;19! 3121! )DEU*!
!!!!!!V    be!    d! U  !B  ! 24! 19;54! 3121! )DEU*!
O  ! Q  b  /!
```

Using the finger command to display information about a user account

The **finger** command displays information about user accounts. It shows details about the user's shell, home directory, and other helpful information. The example above demonstrates the typical user information displayed when using the **finger** command.

Tip

The **finger** command looks for a file called `! / b !` in the specified user's home directory. This file can be edited by the user to contain a note about their status and is displayed whenever they are queried with the **finger** command. If this file does not exist, the **finger** command will display "No Plan" for the user.

Common usage examples:

finger [USER] | Display information about the specified user

passwd

Purpose: Change passwords.

Usage syntax: `! b e! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS ^`

```
$ passwd
F      !      ! VOJY! b      e;! ++++++!
S      !      ! VOJY! b      e;! ++++++!
b      e;! b      e! eb e! dd      !
```

Changing the current user's password

The **passwd** command changes a user's password. Executing **passwd** with no arguments changes the password for the current user as shown in the above example.

The root user can change other user's passwords by specifying a username as demonstrated in the next example.

```
# passwd nick
F      !      ! VOJY! b      e;! ++++++!
S      !      ! VOJY! b      e;! ++++++!
b      e;! b      e! eb e! dd      !
```

Changing a specific user's password

Common usage examples:

passwd	Set the password for the current user
passwd [USER]	Set the password for the specified user
passwd -e [USER]	Force a user to change their password at the next login
passwd -l [USER]	Lock the specified user account
passwd -u [USER]	Unlock the specified user account
passwd -S [USER]	Display the status of the specified user account

useradd / userdel

Purpose: Create/delete user accounts.

Usage syntax: `bee! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS ^`

```
# useradd -m steve
# passwd steve
F      !      ! VOJY!  b      e;! ++++++!
S      !      ! VOJY!  b      e;! ++++++!
b      e;!  b      e!    eb    e!    dd
```

Adding a user account to the system (and setting their password)

The **useradd** command creates new user accounts. In the above example, executing **useradd -m steve** creates a basic login account for a user. The **-m** option is used to automatically create a home directory for the specified user (recommended). The password is then set for the new user using the previously discussed **passwd** command.

Note

*You must set the password for the new user using the **passwd** command before they can login.*

The **userdel** command deletes user accounts from the system. The next example demonstrates using **userdel** to remove an account. The optional **-r** option is used to have the system automatically delete the specified user's home directory after removing their account.

Usage syntax: `e ! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS ^`

```
# userdel -r steve
```

Removing a user account

Note

*The **rmuser** command may be used on some Unix and BSD systems in place of **userdel**.*

Common usage examples:

useradd [USER]	Create the specified user account
useradd -m [USER]	Automatically create a home directory for the user
userdel [USER]	Delete the specified user account
userdel -r [USER]	Delete a user's account and their home directory

adduser / deluser

Purpose: Create/delete user accounts on Linux systems.

Usage syntax: `adduser [options] [username]`

```
# adduser mike
Bee ! ! ( (! //!
Bee ! ! ! ( (! )2113*! //!
Bee ! ! ! ( (! )2113*! ! ! ( (! //!
D b ! ! e d ! (0 0 (! //!
D ! ! ! (0 d0 (! //!
F ! ! VOJY! b e;! *****!
S ! ! VOJY! b e; *****!
b e;! b e! eb e! dd !
D b ! ! ! ! b ! ! !
F ! ! ! b -! ! ! FOUFS! ! ! e b !
!!!!!!!G !Ob ! \^;! Mike Smith!
!!!!!!!S !O c ! \^;! Computer Room!
!!!!!!!X !Q ! \^;! 555-1212!
!!!!!!!I !Q ! \^;!
J ! ! b ! d d @! \ 00^! y!
```

Creating a user with the adduser command

The **adduser** command is a user-friendly frontend for the previously discussed **useradd** command. It simplifies the creation of user accounts on Linux systems by prompting for necessary information when creating accounts (rather than having to specify a number of command line options). The above example demonstrates the typical usage of the **adduser** command.

The **deluser** command deletes user accounts as shown in the next example.

Usage syntax: `deluser [options] [username]`

```
# deluser mike
S ! ! ( (! //!
Xb ;! S ! ! ( (-! d! ! ! ! ! b ! ! ! /!
E /!
```

Removing a user with the deluser command

Note

Default settings for the **adduser** and **deluser** commands are stored in `/etc/default/adduser` and `/etc/default/deluser`.

Common usage examples:

- adduser [USER]
- deluser [USER]
- Create a user account
- Remove a user account

groupadd / groupdel

Purpose: Add/remove a group.

Usage syntax: `bee! \HSPVQ^`

```
# groupadd accounting
```

Creating a new group with groupadd

The **groupadd** command creates new group accounts. Groups are helpful in managing access to files and directories in a multiuser environment. In the above example a new group called *accounting* is created. The resulting group entry in the `/etc/group` file is displayed below.

```
# grep accounting /etc/group
bdd      ;:2113;!
```

Displaying a group entry in the `/etc/group` file

The **groupdel** command deletes groups from the system. The next example demonstrates using the **groupdel** command to remove the previously created *accounting* group from the system

Usage syntax: `e ! \HSPVQ^`

```
# groupdel accounting
```

Deleting a group using groupdel

Common usage examples:

groupadd [GROUP]	Create a new group
groupdel [GROUP]	Delete a group

usermod / groupmod

Purpose: Modify user and group account settings.

Usage syntax: `e! \PQUJPOT^! \VTFS ^`

```
# usermod -aG sales nick
```

Changing a user's group membership using the usermod command

The **usermod** command modifies user account settings. In the above example, the **-aG** option is used to add the user *nick* to the *sales* group. You can also use the **usermod** command to change a user's home directory location using the **-d** option or default shell using **-s**.

The **groupmod** command modifies groups. Its primary purpose is to rename a group. In the next example the *accounting* group is renamed to *finance* using **groupmod -n**.

Usage syntax: `e! \PQUJPOT^! \HSPVQ^`

```
# groupmod accounting -n finance
```

```
# grep finance /etc/group
```

```
  b d ; ;2113;!
```

Renaming a group using the groupmod command

Common usage examples:

usermod -s [SHELL] [USER]	Change a user's default shell
usermod -d [DIR] [USER]	Change a user's home directory location
usermod -aG [GROUP] [USER]	Add a user to the specified group
groupmod [OLD] -n [NEW]	Rename the specified group

wall

Purpose: Broadcast a message to all users on the system.

Usage syntax: `! b ! \GJMF^`

```
# wall
B      ! b !      ! bd  @!
!  
<CTRL + D>
```

Using the wall command to send a message to all users logged into the system

The **wall** command sends a message to all users currently logged into the system. The text entered in the above example will display on all local terminals and remote sessions currently logged into the system.

Note *Pressing **CTRL + D** ends the message editor and sends the message.*

The next example displays a sample of the **wall** message output as seen by other users on the system.

```
$  
  
C bedb !N b !      !      A 7511! )0e 0 01*! b ! 22;67! //!!!!  
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!  
B      ! b !      ! bd  @!
```

Output of the wall message displayed on all terminals

In place of manually entering a message, a text file with a prewritten message can be used with the wall command, as shown in the next example.

```
# wall /home/nick/message.txt
```

Using a text file to send a message with the wall command

Common usage examples:

wall	Send a message to all users
wall [FILE]	Send the message in the specified file to all users

ulimit

Purpose: Display/set system resource limits.

Usage syntax: `ulimit [-a] [-H] [-S] [-c] [-f] [-i] [-l] [-m] [-n] [-p] [-r] [-t] [-u] [-v] [-x] [-y] [-z] [LIMIT]`

```
$ ulimit -a
d ! ! !!!!!!!!!!!!! )c d -! .d*! 1!
eb b! ! !!!!!!!!!!!!! ) c -! .e*! e!
d e ! !!!!!!!!!!!!! ) . *! 31!
! !!!!!!!!!!!!! )c d -! . *! e!
e ! b !!!!!!!!!!!!! ) . *! 27493!
b ! d e! !!!!!!!!! ) c -! . *! 75!
b ! ! !!!!!!!!! ) c -! . *! e!
! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! ) . *! 2135!
! !!!!!!!!!!!!! )623! c -! . *! 9!
QPTJY! b ! !!!!! )c -! . *! 92: 311!
b . ! !!!!!!!!!!!!! ) . *! 1!
bd ! !!!!!!!!!!!!! ) c -! . *! 92: 3!
d ! !!!!!!!!!!!!! ) d e -! . *! e!
b ! ! d !!!!!!!!!!!!! ) . *! e!
b ! !!!!!!!!!!!!! ) c -! . *! e!
! d !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! ) . *! e!
```

Displaying defined resource limits using the ulimit command

The `ulimit` command displays and sets system resource limits. These limits control the maximum amount of system resources available to programs. It can be used to control the maximum amount of memory, CPU time, and file sizes available to each program launched by a user.

Tip

Ulimit configuration is typically stored in `/etc/limits.conf` or `/etc/security/limits.conf` on most systems.

Common usage examples:

<code>ulimit -a</code>	Display all defined resource limits
<code>ulimit [OPTION] [LIMIT]</code>	Set ulimit values

Section 6:

Process Control and Scheduling

Overview

Every program that runs on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems is considered to be a process. Processes are assigned a unique identifier which it used to monitor and control the process. This process identifier (PID) can be used to control processes using the command line utilities discussed in this section.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
ps	Display running processes.
pgrep	Find processes by name.
pstree	Display all running processes in a tree view.
kill	Terminate a process.
killall	Terminate all processes with the specified name.
nice	Execute programs at the specified CPU priority level.
renice	Alter the priority of a running process.
&	Start a process in the background.
bg fg	Move a process to the background/foreground.
jobs	Display background and suspended jobs.
nohup	Run a process immune to hang-up signals.
batch	Schedule programs to run during low CPU load.
at	Schedule programs to run at the specified time.
atq	Display queued at jobs.
atrm	Remove scheduled at jobs from the queue.
crontab	Schedule programs to run at the specified time(s).

Glossary of terms used in this section:

Cron	A scheduling system used to execute programs at specific time intervals.
Job	A program that has been scheduled, suspended, or is currently running using the at or batch scheduling programs.
Nice Value	A numerical indicator assigned to processes to indicate and control their CPU scheduling priority.
PID	(P rocess I Dentifier) A unique numeric value assigned to each process executed on a system.
PPID	(P arent P rocess I Dentifier) The PID of the parent process that started a child process.
Priority	Synonym for <i>Nice Value</i> .
Process	Any program that has been executed.

ps

Purpose: Display running processes.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^`

```
$ ps
!! QJE! UUZ!!!!!!!!!! UJNF! DNE
! 5:69!    01!!!! 11;11;11! cb
! :6:7!    01!!!! 11;11;11!
```

Example output of the ps command

The **ps** command displays running process on the system. Executing the **ps** command with no options will display all processes owned by the current user as shown in the above example. For a complete listing of processes, use the **-e** option as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ ps -e
!! QJE! UUZ!!!!!!!!!! UJNF! DNE!
!!!! 2! @!!!!!!!! 11;11;12!    !
!!!! 3! @!!!!!!!! 11;11;11!    bee!
!!!! 4! @!!!!!!!! 11;11;11!    b    01!
!!!! 5! @!!!!!!!! 11;11;11!    e01!
!!!! 6! @!!!!!!!! 11;11;11!  b d e  01
//^
```

Using the -e option with the ps command

The **-ef** option can be used to display detailed information about all processes on the system. This includes the user ID, process ID, parent process ID, and other helpful information, as shown in the next example.

```
$ ps -ef
VJE!!!!!!!! QJE! QQJE! D! TUJNF! UUZ!!!!!!!!!! UJNF! DNE!
!!!!!!!! 2!!!! 1! 1! K 35! @!!!!!!!! 11;11;13! 0 c  0    !
!!!!!!!! 3!!!! 1! 1! K 35! @!!!!!!!! 11;11;11! \    bee^!
!!!!!!!! 4!!!! 3! 1! K 35! @!!!!!!!! 11;11;11! \    b    01^!
!!!!!!!! 5!!!! 3! 1! K 35! @!!!!!!!! 11;11;11! \    e01^!
!!!!!!!! 6!!!! 3! 1! K 35! @!!!!!!!! 11;11;11! \ b d e  01^!
//^
```

Output of the ps -ef command

Common usage examples:

ps	Display the current user's processes
ps -e	Display all processes running on the system
ps -ef	Display detailed information about running processes
ps -u [USER]	Display processes owned by the specified user

pgrep

Purpose: Find processes by name.

Usage syntax: `pgrep [-l] [-P PPID] [-c] NAME`

```
$ pgrep apache
4: 63!
5186!
5187!
5188!
5189!
518:!
```

Displaying PIDs with the name of apache using the pgrep command

The **pgrep** command displays all processes matching the specified name. In the above example the PIDs for the *apache* web server are displayed. This is the equivalent of typing **ps -e | grep apache** and is provided as a shortcut to produce the same results.

The **-l** option can be used with **pgrep** to display the full process name for each PID as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ pgrep -l apache
4: 63! b bd 3!
5186! b bd 3!
5187! b bd 3!
5188! b bd 3!
5189! b bd 3!
518:! b bd 3!
```

Using the -l option with pgrep to display the full name of each process

Note

*Some systems may use the **pidof** command in place of the **pgrep** command.*

Common usage examples:

pgrep [NAME]	Display PIDs matching the specified name
pgrep -l [NAME]	Display the process name in addition to the PID
pgrep -P [PPID]	Display all child processes of the specified PPID
pgrep -c [NAME]	Display the total number of matching processes

pstree

Purpose: Display all running processes in a tree view.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^`

```
$ pstree
init--NetworkManager--dhclient!
!!!!|                    |{NetworkManager}!
!!!!|--acpid!
!!!!|--apache2--5*[apache2]!
!!!!|--atd!
!!!!|--cron!
!!!!|--cupsd!
!!!!|--dbus. b d !
!!!!|--dd!
!!!!|--fast. . d!
!!!!|--gconfd. 3!
!!!!|--6*[getty]!
!!!!|--gnome. . e!
!!!!|--gnome. . man--{gnome. . b !
!!!!|--gnome. d b !
!!!!|--gnome. . --{gnome. . !
!!!!|--gnome.terminal--bash--pstree!
!!!!|                    |gnome. . !
!!!!|                    |{gnome. b !
!!!!|!
!!!!|--gvfsd!
!!!!|--gvfsd.c !
//^
```

Displaying a process tree using the pstree command

The **pstree** command draws a process tree for all processes currently running on the system, as shown in the above example. The output of **pstree** makes it easy to see the relationship between parent and child processes.

Common usage examples:

pstree	Display a basic process tree listing
pstree -p	Include PID numbers in the tree listing
pstree -a	Include command line options for each process
pstree [USER]	Display processes owned by the specified user
pstree [PID]	Display child processes of the specified PID

kill

Purpose: Terminate a process.

Usage syntax:! ! \PQUJPOT^! \QJE^

```
# pgrep -l mysqld
6651!          e!
# kill 5540
```

Using the kill command to terminate a process

The **kill** command terminates the specified PID. In the above example, the *mysqld* process with a PID of 5540 is terminated using **kill**.

The default behavior of the **kill** command requests the process to gracefully exit. If a process fails to properly terminate, optional kill signals can be sent to force the process to end. The most commonly used kill signal in this situation is **-9** which forcefully terminates the specified PID as displayed in the next example.

```
# pgrep -l mysqld
6656!          e!
# kill -9 5545
```

Using the -9 option to kill a hung process

Note

It is recommended to only use the `kill -9` command in rare situations where a hung process refuses to gracefully exit. The `-9` signal is only used in these extreme situations, as it can cause undesired results such as system instability and "zombie" child processes.

Common usage examples:

kill [PID]	Terminate the specified process
kill -9 [PID]	Force an unresponsive process to terminate

killall

Purpose: Terminate all processes with the specified name.

Usage syntax: `killall -i NAME`

```
# pgrep -l apache2
4:63! b bd 3!
5186! b bd 3!
5187! b bd 3!
5188! b bd 3!
5189! b bd 3!
518:~ b bd 3!
# killall apache2
```

Terminating processes by name using the killall command

The **killall** command terminates all processes that match the specified name. This can be helpful if you have several processes with the same name that you need to kill. In the above example, multiple processes related to the *apache2* service are terminated using **killall**.

Tip

*The **-i** parameter can be used with **killall** to prompt for confirmation before terminating each process. This is recommended as it helps prevent killing the wrong process due to typos.*

Common usage examples:

killall [NAME]	Terminate all processes with the specified name
killall -i [NAME]	Prompt for confirmation before killing processes

nice

Purpose: Execute programs at the specified CPU priority level.

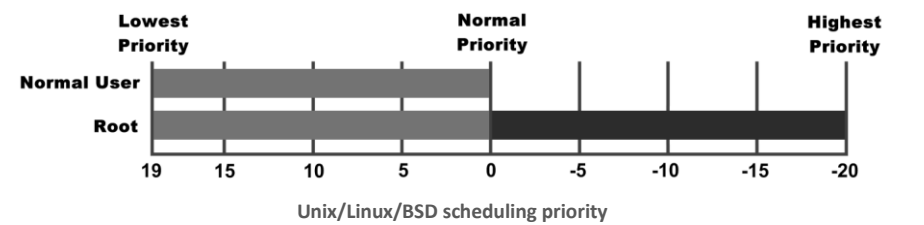
Usage syntax: `! d ! \PQUJPOT^! \DPNNBOE^`

```
# nice -n 19 LowPriority.sh
# nice -n -20 HighPriority.sh
```

Changing the priority of a process using the nice command

The **nice** command allows programs to be started at a lower or higher than normal scheduling priority. This allows you to control which processes the kernel should favor when dividing processor time among running programs. Processes with the lowest **nice** number are executed with the highest priority and vice versa. The example above demonstrates using **nice** to start programs with modified scheduling priority.

On most systems, priority levels for *normal users* range from 0 to 19, with 0 being the highest priority and 19 being the lowest priority. The *root* user can create processes with a range of -20 (highest) to 19 (lowest).



Most programs start with a nice level of 0 by default. Critical system services usually have a negative nice level so that they are always given preference over user programs.

Note

Some Unix systems may use a range of 0 to 39 with 0 being the highest priority and 39 being the lowest. For more information see **man nice** on your local system.

Common usage examples:

nice -n [NUM] [COMMAND] | Start a program with the specified priority

renice

Purpose: Alter the priority of a running process.

Usage syntax: `renice [-p] [-n] PID`

```
# renice +5 -p 7279
838: ;! e! ! 1-! ! ! 6!
```

Changing the priority of a process

The **renice** command adjusts the priority of a running process. In the above example PID 7279 is adjusted to have a +5 priority. This effectively lowers the priority of the process since the previous priority was 0.

Common usage examples:

renice +/- [NUM] -p [PID] | Change the specified PID's priority

&

Purpose: Start a process in the background.

Usage syntax: `! \DPNNBOE^! '`

```
$ ./SomeProgram.sh &
\2^! 21828!
$ ps
! QJE! UUZ!!!!!!!!!! UJNF! DNE
217: 7!    01!!!! 11;11;11! cb  !
21828!    01!!!! 11;11;14! T   Q    b /  !
21832!    01!!!! 11;11;11!   !
```

Executing a program in the background with the & command line operator

& is a command line operator that instructs the shell to start the specified program in the background. This allows you to have more than one program running at the same time without having to start multiple terminal sessions. In the above example, a shell script called `T Q b / !` is started as a background process. Executing the `ps` command shows the requested program is now running in the background.

Tip

Output from background programs will still be displayed in the shell. You can redirect this output to a file by using the following syntax:

SomeProgram.sh > output.log & *This will redirect all the output of the background program to a file called! / ! in the current directory.*

Common usage examples:

<code>[COMMAND] &</code>	Execute the specified command in the background
<code>[COMMAND] > [FILE] &</code>	Redirect the output of the background command to a file

bg / fg

Purpose: Move a process to the background/foreground.

Usage syntax: `! c ! \KPCJE^`

```
$ ./SomeProgram.sh
<CTRL + Z>
\2^!!!T      e!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!T    Q    b / !
$ bg 1
$ jobs
\2^!!!S      !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!T    Q    b /
```

Suspending a running program and then resuming it in the background

The **bg** command sends a process to the background. This allows you to multitask several programs within a single terminal session. In the above example the shell script `! T Q b / !` is suspended (by pressing **CTRL + Z** on the keyboard) and then resumed as a background process using **bg**.

Note

*The **jobs** command (see page 116) can be used to verify the program is now running in the background.*

The **fg** command moves background processes to the foreground. In the next example the **fg** command is used to bring the specified job ID to the foreground.

Usage syntax: `! ! \KPCJE^`

```
$ jobs
\2^!!!S      !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!T    Q    b / !
$ fg 1
T    Q    b / !
//^
```

Moving a background job to the foreground

Common usage examples:

bg [JOBID]	Send the specified job to the background
fg [JOBID]	Move the specified job to the foreground

jobs

Purpose: Display background and suspended jobs.

Usage syntax: `c ! \PQUJPOT^`

```
$ jobs
\2^.! S      !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! T    Q    b / !
\3^,! T      e!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! B      Q    b / !
\4^,! T      e!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! U      / !
```

Displaying background programs using the jobs command

The **jobs** command displays the status of background programs and suspended processes. In the above example, three background jobs are displayed. The previously mentioned **fg** and **bg** commands can be used to move the processes to the foreground and background respectively.

The following table describes the output fields of the **jobs** command.

Job ID	Status	Program
\2^.! S	!	T Q b / !
\3^,! T	e!	B Q b / !
\4^,! T	e!	U / !

Output fields of the jobs command

Note

The plus sign is used to indicate what job is considered to be the default job (for use with the **bg** and **fg** commands). The minus sign indicates the job that will become the default if the current default job terminates. There can be only one + and - at any given time. All other jobs will not have any indicators.

Common usage examples:

- jobs
- jobs -l
- Display all jobs
- Display all jobs and their PID

nohup

Purpose: Run a process immune to hang-up signals.

Usage syntax: `nohup COMMAND > /dev/null &`

```
$ nohup SomeProgram.sh &
$ exit
```

Using the `nohup` command to launch a background program

The **nohup** command makes processes immune to hang-up signals. A hang-up signal is used to inform child processes of a shell that the parent process is terminating. This would normally cause all child processes to terminate. Using **nohup** allows a program to continue running after you log out, as demonstrated in the above example.

Tip

Output from the program is stored in a file called `nohup.out` in the directory where the `nohup` command was executed.

Common usage examples:

`nohup [COMMAND] &` | Execute a program immune to hang-up signals

at / atq / atrm

Purpose: Schedule a program to run at the specified time.

Usage syntax: `at ! \PQUJPOT^! \UJNF EBUF^!`

```
$ at 1am
b ?! MyProgram.sh!
b ?! <CTRL + D>!
c! 2! b ! Tb ! Nb ! 4! 12;11;11! 311:!
```

Scheduling a process using the at command

The **at** command schedules programs to run at the specified time. In the above example, the **at** command is used to launch a shell script called **MyProgram.sh**. The launch time in this example is specified as `2b !` on the command line. You can also use more traditional Unix time specifications such as 01:00 or any other HH:MM combination.

Tip

*The **at** command has a special command line argument called **now**. This can be used as a shortcut to save time when scheduling jobs. For example typing **at now + 15 minutes** would schedule the job to launch 15 minutes from the current time.*

The **atq** command displays information about queued **at** jobs as shown in the next example.

Usage syntax: `atq`

```
$ atq
2!      Tb ! Nb ! 4! 12;11;11! 311:! N Q      b / ! d !
```

Using the atq command to display the job queue

The **atrm** command deletes a scheduled job as shown in the next example.

Usage syntax: `atrm ! \KPCJE^`

```
$ atrm 1
```

Removing a scheduled job using the atrm command

Common usage examples:

at [TIME]	Schedule a program to run at the specified time
atq	Display the at job queue
atrm [JOBID]	Remove a scheduled job from the at queue

batch

Purpose: Schedule programs to run during low CPU load.

Usage syntax: `batch [options] command`

```
$ batch
b ?! BigProgram.sh!
b ?! <CTRL + D>!
c! 2! b ! G ! Nb ! 3:! 31;12;11! 311!
```

Scheduling a batch process

The **batch** command schedules a program to run when the system CPU load is low. This is useful for running resource-intensive programs that would normally interfere with system performance.

In this example the **batch** program is used to schedule the `Cat /etc/passwd` script to run when the system CPU load is low.

Note

*Each platform has its own definition of low load. See `man batch` for more information about your system's **batch** command usage.*

Common usage examples:

batch | Launch the batch scheduling shell

crontab

Purpose: Schedule programs to run at the specified time(s).

Usage syntax: `! d bc! \PQUJPOT^`

```
# crontab -l
41! 23! +! +! 2. 6! 0 0T Q b / !
```

Displaying configured cron jobs

The **crontab** command manages a user's scheduled cron jobs. Cron is a subsystem found on most Unix, Linux, and BSD systems that schedules programs to run at a specific interval. It differs from the previously discussed **at** command because cron jobs run at reoccurring intervals (where **at** jobs run only once).

Note

The name cron comes from the Greek word "chronos" which means "time".

In the above example, the **-l** option is used to display the current user's crontab. The table below describes the fields found in the crontab file.

Minute	Hour	Day of Month	Month	Day of Week	Program				
41!	23!	+!	+!	2. 6!	0	0T	Q	b	/ !

Crontab fields

In this example `! T Q b / !` is run every Monday-Friday at 12:30 PM. The day of week is symbolized as 0=Sunday, 1=Monday, 2=Tuesday, etc. An asterisk (*) is a wild card that represents all valid values.

crontab -e is used to edit the current user's crontab as demonstrated in the next example.

```
# crontab -e
!! 41!! 23!! +!!!! +!!!! 2. 6!!!! 0 0T Q b /
```

Editing the crontab

Common usage examples:

- crontab -l**
- crontab -e**
- crontab -r**
- List the current user's crontab
- Edit the current user's crontab
- Delete the current user's crontab

Section 7:

Startup and Shutdown

Overview

This chapter covers commands used to startup and shutdown Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. It also provides an overview of platform specific service control commands for popular platforms.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
shutdown	Shut down the system.
poweroff	Power off the system.
reboot	Reboot the system.
halt	Halt the system.
telinit	Change the runlevel.
runlevel	Display the previous and current runlevel.
service	Manage services on a Linux system.
sysv-rc-conf	Display and edit Linux runlevel configuration.
chkconfig	Display and edit runlevel configuration on Red Hat Linux-based systems.
rc-update	Display and edit runlevel configuration on Gentoo Linux systems.
rc-status	Display the status of services on Gentoo Linux systems.
stopsrc startsrc	Stop/start services on AIX systems.
lssrc	Display the status of services on AIX systems.
svcs	Display the status of services on Solaris systems.
svcadm	Start/stop services on Solaris systems.

Glossary of terms used in this section:

Init	(INIT ialization) A program that controls the startup (AKA initialization) of Unix, Linux, and BSD systems.
Runlevel	A set of profiles used by the init program that defines the programs and services to load during system startup (or when called by the telinit command).
Service	A system program that provides a service as a web server, DNS server, email server, etc. Services are sometimes referred to as <i>Daemons</i> or <i>Service Daemons</i> .

shutdown

Purpose: Shut down the system.

Usage syntax: e ! \PQUJPOT^! \UJNF^! \NFTTBHF^

```
# shutdown now
CSPBEDBTU! NFTTBHF! GSPN! SPPU;!
U !      !    !e   !    e   !"
+! T           d  !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! \ PL! ^!
+! U          b   !   d  !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! \ PL! ^!
//^
U !              !    !     ! b /!
```

Example output from the shutdown command

The **shutdown** command is used to shutdown the local system. There are several different types of shutdowns that can be performed: halt, poweroff, and reboot.

Note

Usage of the **shutdown** command varies between the various Unix, Linux, and BSD platforms. Examples on this page are intended for Linux systems. For usage examples specific to your environment, type **man shutdown** on your local system.

When the **shutdown** command is executed, a warning is broadcast to all users logged in to the local system. An optional message can be specified following the time argument as shown in the next example.

```
# shutdown 2 Save your work and log off ASAP!
CSPBEDBTU! NfTTbHF! GSPN! SPPU;! !
U ! ! ! e ! ! e ! ! 3! !
Tb ! ! ! b e! ! ! BTBQ!"
```

Example output from the shutdown command's broadcast message

Common usage examples:

shutdown now	Shutdown the system immediately
shutdown [MIN]	Wait the specified number of minutes before shutting down
shutdown [HH:MM]	Shutdown at the specified time (24-hour format)
shutdown -r now	Restart the system
shutdown -H now	Halt the system
shutdown -P now	Power off the system

poweroff

Purpose: Power off the system.

Usage syntax:!

```
# poweroff
CSPBEDBTU! NfTTbHF! GSPN! SPPU;!!
U !      ! !      !e !      !      !      "
+! T      !      d !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! \ PL! ^!
+! U      b      !      d !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! \ PL! ^!
//^!
U !      !      !      !      !      ^!
```

Example output of the poweroff command

The **poweroff** command will immediately shutdown and power off the system. It is essentially a shortcut for **shutdown -P now**. The **poweroff** command is found on all Linux distributions and some BSD and Unix systems.

Note

To see if the **poweroff** command is supported on your system, type **whereis poweroff**.

Warning

The **poweroff** command does not offer a grace period and will immediately bring down the system when executed.

Common usage examples:

poweroff | Shutdown and poweroff the system

reboot

Purpose: Reboot the system.

Usage syntax: `reboot`

```
# reboot
CSPBEDBTU! NfTTbHF! GSPN! SPPU;! U ! ! !e ! ! c ! "
!
+! T ! d !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! \ PL ^!
+! U b ! d !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! \ PL ^!
//^
U ! ! ! ! c /!
```

Example output of the reboot command

The **reboot** command is used to gracefully reboot the system. It is essentially a shortcut for **shutdown -r now**. Executing **reboot** on the command line will immediately reboot the system as demonstrated in the above example.

Warning

*The **reboot** command does not offer a grace period and will immediately reboot the system when executed.*

Common usage examples:

reboot | Gracefully reboot the system

halt

Purpose: Halt the system.

Usage syntax:!

```
# halt
CSPBEDBTU! NFTTBHF! GSPN! SPPU;! U !          ! !          ! e !          ! b !      "
!  
+! T           !         d !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! \ PL! ^!  
+! U           b        !         d !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! \ PL! ^!  
//!  
U !            !       !       ! b /!
```

Example output of the halt command

The **halt** command will halt an online system. A halt is a special type of shutdown which gracefully shuts down the operating system without powering off the system.

Note

Some commercial Unix systems will enter maintenance mode when halted. This can be used to access a pre-boot configuration/diagnostic environment.

Common usage examples:

halt	Halt the system
-------------	-----------------

telinit

Purpose: Change the runlevel.

Usage syntax: `telinit [RUNLEVEL]`

```
# telinit 1
+++! T d ! ! ! ! 2! +++!
# runlevel
4! 2!
```

Using telinit to change the system's runlevel

telinit tells the system's *init* process to stop and start the necessary services configured for the specified runlevel. In the above example the **telinit** command is used to change the system to runlevel 1. The **runlevel** command (see page 128) is then executed to display the current and previous runlevels.

Each system's runlevel configuration is specific to the distribution being used and can be customized to fit your needs. Most Unix, Linux, and BSD systems will have a runlevel configuration similar to the one described in the following table.

Runlevel	Purpose
0	Shutdown or special administrative mode
1	Single user mode
2	Multiuser mode
3	Multiuser mode
4	Multiuser mode
5	Distribution specific
6	Reboot

Typical Unix, Linux, and BSD runlevels

Common usage examples:

telinit [RUNLEVEL] | Tell the init process to load the specified runlevel

runlevel

Purpose: Display the previous and current runlevel.

Usage syntax:!

```
$ runlevel
4! 2!
```

Output of the runlevel command

The **runlevel** command displays the current and previous runlevel. The runlevel is an initialization sequence called by the *init* process and defines procedures for system startup and shutdown. In the above example, **runlevel** is used to display the current runlevel information. The first number displayed is the previous runlevel and the second number is the current runlevel.

Note

If there is no previous runlevel, the system will display! 0! in the first field.

Common usage examples:

runlevel | Display the previous and current runlevel

service

Purpose: Manage services on a Linux system.

Usage syntax: `service [OPTIONS] [SERVICE] {start|stop|restart|status}`

```
# service --status-all
! \, ! ^! bd e
! \, ! ^! b bd
! \, ! ^! b bd 3
! \, ! ^! b e
! \, ! ^! d
! \, ! ^! ec
! \, ! ^! e
! \, ! ^! b
! \, ! ^! e
! \, ! ^!
! \, ! ^! e
//^
```

Displaying the status of services with the service command

The **service** command manages services on Linux systems. In the above example, the **--status-all** option displays the status of all services on the system. The **+** symbol indicates a running service and the **-** symbol indicates a stopped service.

The **start**, **stop**, **restart**, and **status** options can be used to control individual services as demonstrated in the next example.

```
# service ssh stop
! +! T      ! P    CTE! T d  ! T      !      !      e! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! \ PL! ^
# service ssh start
! +! T b     ! P    CTE! T d  ! T      !      !      e! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! \ PL! ^
# service ssh restart
! +! S      b     ! P    CTE! T d  ! T      !      !      e! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! \ PL! ^
# service ssh status
! +!      e!      !
```

Stopping, starting, restarting, and viewing the status of services

Common usage examples:

service [SERVICE] stop	Stop the specified service
service [SERVICE] start	Start the specified service
service [SERVICE] restart	Restart the specified service
service [SERVICE] status	Display the status of the specified service
service --status-all	Display the status of all services

sysv-rc-conf

Purpose: Display and edit Linux runlevel configuration.

Usage syntax: `sysv-rc-conf`

```
# sysv-rc-conf
SysV Runlevel Config  .: stop service  =/+: start service  h: help  q: quit

service      1      2      3      4      5      0      6      S
.....!
acpid        [ ]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [ ]    [ ]    [ ]
anacron      [ ]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [ ]    [ ]    [ ]
apache       [ ]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [ ]    [ ]    [ ]
apparmor     [ ]    [ ]    [ ]    [ ]    [ ]    [ ]    [ ]    [X]
appport      [ ]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [ ]    [ ]    [ ]
atd          [ ]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [ ]    [ ]    [ ]
bind9        [ ]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [X]    [ ]    [ ]    [ ]

Use the arrow keys or mouse to move around.      ^n: next pg      ^p: prev pg
space: toggle service on / off
```

Example output of the sysv-rc-conf command

The **sysv-rc-conf** command manages service/runlevel configuration on Linux systems. In the above example, executing **sysv-rc-conf** starts a configuration utility which enables the user to select which services start on the various runlevels.

Services can also be displayed and modified via the command line using the **--list** and **--level** options as demonstrated in the next example.

```
# sysv-rc-conf --level 2345 apache off
# sysv-rc-conf --list apache2
b bd 3!!!!!!3; ! 4; ! 5; ! 6; !
# sysv-rc-conf --level 2345 apache2 on
# sysv-rc-conf --list apache2
b bd 3!!!!!!3; ! 4; ! 5; ! 6; !
```

Using the sysv-rc-conf command to mange services on the command line

Common usage examples:

<code>sysv-rc-conf</code>	Display the runlevel configuration utility
<code>sysv-rc-conf --list</code>	List runlevel configuration for all services
<code>sysv-rc-conf --level [LEVEL] [SERVICE] on</code>	Enable a service on the specified level(s)
<code>sysv-rc-conf --level [LEVEL] [SERVICE] off</code>	Disable a service on the specified level(s)

chkconfig

Purpose: Display and edit runlevel configuration on Red Hat Linux-based systems.

Usage syntax: `chkconfig [target] [service] [on|off|reset] [levels]`

```
# chkconfig -l
bd .                !!!!!!!1;  !!2;  !!3;  !!!4;  !!!5;  !!!6;  !!!7;  !
bd el!!!!!!1;  !!2;  !!3;  !!!4;  !!!5;  !!!6;  !!!7;  !
b b.                !!!!!!!1;  !!2;  !!3;  !!!4;  !!!5;  !!!6;  !!!7;  !
b bd !!!!!!!1;  !!2;  !!3;  !!!4;  !!!5;  !!!6;  !!!7;  !
b bd 3!!!!!!1;  !!2;  !!3;  !!!4;  !!!5;  !!!6;  !!!7;  !
b      !!!!!!!1;  !!2;  !!3;  !!!4;  !!!5;  !!!6;  !!!7;  !
//^
```

Listing service configuration with the chkconfig command

The **chkconfig** command manages services on Red Hat Linux systems. The **-l** parameter lists the current runlevel configuration, as shown in the above example. If no service is specified, all services will be displayed. Specifying a service name will display the runlevel configuration for the service, as shown in the next example.

```
b bd 3!!!!!!1;  !!2;  !!3;  !!!4;  !!!5;  !!!6;  !!!7;  !
```

Listing a specific service with the chkconfig command

The **-s** option is used to enable or disable services at the specified run levels as demonstrated in the next example.

```
# chkconfig -s apache2 off 2345
# chkconfig -l apache2
b bd 3!!!!!!1;  !!2;  !!3;!  !4;!  !5;!  !6;  !7;  !
# chkconfig -s apache2 on 2345
# chkconfig -l apache2
b bd 3!!!!!!1;  !!2;  !!3;  !!!4;  !!!5;  !!!6;  !!!7;  !
```

Managing services with the chkconfig command

Common usage examples:

rc-update

Purpose: Display and edit runlevel configuration on Gentoo Linux systems.

Usage syntax: `rc-update [add|del] [SERVICE] [runlevel]`

```
# rc-update show
!!! b b e! e b 
!!! b bd 3! e b 
!!! c d! c 
!!! d d !! c 
!!! d d !! c 
!!! d b e! e b 
!!! d d !! c 
!!!!!! d !! c 
!!!!!! d .b c! e b 
!!!!!! d . b e! e b 
!!! d . b e. ! e b 
!!!!!! d . 4e! e b 
!!! d . 4e. ! e b 
!! ///
```

Using the rc-update command to display runlevel configuration

The **rc-update** command manages services on Gentoo Linux-based systems. In the above example, the **show** option is used to display the current runlevel configuration.

The **add** and **del** options are used to add and delete services from the specified runlevel, as shown in the next example.

```
# rc-update add sshd default
!+! e! bee e! ! e b
# rc-update del sshd default
+! ( e(! e! ! ! ! ;! e b !
```

Adding and removing services to the default runlevel using rc-update

Common usage examples:

<code>rc-update show</code>	List runlevel configuration for all services
<code>rc-update add \</code> <code>[SERVICE] default</code>	Add the specified service to the default runlevels
<code>rc-update del \</code> <code>[SERVICE] default</code>	Remove the specified service from the default runlevels

lssrc

Purpose: Display the status of services on AIX systems.

Usage syntax: `d! \PQUJPOT^! \TFSWJDF0HSPVQ^`

```
# lssrc -a
T c          !!!!!!!!! H          !!!!!!!!! QJEL!!!!!!!! T b  !
!           e!!!!!!!! b !!!!!!!!! 2586:1!!!!!!!! bd  !
!    e b !!!!!!!!! b !!!!!!!!! 299619!!!!!!!! bd  !
!           b !!!!!!!!! b !!!!!!!!! 237:91!!!!!!!! bd  !
!           ce!!!!!!!! d !!!!!!!!! 262839!!!!!!!! bd  !
!           e!!!!!!!! d !!!!!!!!! 274:69!!!!!!!! bd  !
!           e!!!!!!!! d !!!!!!!!! 291427!!!!!!!! bd  !
!           ce!!!!!!!! d !!!!!!!!! 26:963!!!!!!!! bd  !
! b          ce!!!!!!!! d !!!!!!!!! 279135!!!!!!!! bd  !
! c  e!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!! 2:7817!!!!!!!! bd  !
!    d/  b e!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!! 31:149!!!!!!!! bd  !
!    d/  d e!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!! 315:95!!!!!!!! bd  !
! eb          !!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!! 328311!!!!!!!! bd  !
!           !!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!! 344699!!!!!!!! bd  !
! d  d!!!!!!!! d !!!!!!!!! 352981!!!!!!!! bd  !
! d          !!!!!!!!! d          !!!!!!!!! 381581!!!!!!!! bd  !
! d          !!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!! 33:615!!!!!!!! bd  !
! JCN/T      d SN!!!! d ` !!!!!!!!! 422581!!!!!!!! bd  !
! JCN/DTNB    SN!!!! d ` !!!!!!!!! 3:2115!!!!!!!! bd  !
! e!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!! b  !
//^
```

Listing the status of all services

The **lssrc** command displays the status of services on AIX systems. The above example demonstrates using the **-a** option to display the status of all services. The next example demonstrates using the **-s** option to list a specific service.

```
# lssrc -s nfsd
T c          !!!!!!!!! H          !!!!!!!!! QJEL!!!!!!!! T b  !
!           e!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!! b  !
```

Listing a specific service

Common usage examples:

<code>lssrc -a</code>	Display the status of all services
<code>lssrc -s [SERVICE]</code>	Display the status of the specified services
<code>lssrc -g [GROUP]</code>	Display the status of the specified group of services

stopsrc / startsrc

Purpose: Start/stop services on AIX systems.

Usage syntax: `! b d! \PQUJPOT^! \TFSWJDF0HSPVQ^`

```
# startsrc -s nfsd
1624.16:! U ! e! T c ! b! c ! b e! T c ! QJE! ! 332511 /!
```

Starting a service on AIX with startsrc

The **startsrc** command starts services (known as SRCs or system resource controllers) on AIX systems. The above example demonstrates using the **startsrc** command to start the NFS service.

The **stopsrc** command stops services on AIX systems. The next example demonstrates using **stopsrc** to stop the NFS service.

Usage syntax: `! b d! \PQUJPOT^! \TFSWJDF0HSPVQ^`

```
# stopsrc -s nfsd
1624.155! U ! e! T c ! b ! e! ! /!
```

Stopping a service on AIX with stopsrc

Common usage examples:

startsrc -s [SERVICE]	Start the specified service
stopsrc -s [SERVICE]	Stop the specified service
startsrc -g [GROUP]	Start the specified group of services
stopsrc -g [GROUP]	Stop the specified group of services
stopsrc -a	Stop all running services

svcs

Purpose: Display the status of services on Solaris systems.

Usage syntax: `d ! \PQUJPOT^! \TFSWJDF^`

```
# svcs
TUBUF!!!!!!!!!! TUJNF!!!! GNSJ!
bd `      !!!!! 2:;52;2:!   d;0  d0 dT` e0T61  :9  !
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;22!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T21  !
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;22!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T31      !
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;22!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T51  d3!
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;23!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T53  db  e!
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;24!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T58    e!
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;24!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T81  d !
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;24!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T83b      b !
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;24!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T84dbd    `eb  !
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;25!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T92e eb be ` eb  !
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;25!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T9: QSFTFSWF!
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;25!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T: 5 db  e!
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;26!   d;0  d0 d3` e0T: 9e b   db  !
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;27!   d;0  d0 d4` e0T27c    `      !
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;28!   d;0  d0 d4` e0T61b bd  !
//^
```

Listing services on a Solaris system with the svcs command

The **svcs** command displays the status of services on Solaris systems. Executing **svcs** with no options will list all active services, as shown in the example above.

To see the status of an individual service, a service name can be specified as demonstrated in the next example.

```
# svcs apache
TUBUF!!!!!!!!!! TUJNF!!!! GNSJ!
bd `      !!!!! 2:;53;28!   d;0  d0 d4` e0T61b bd  !
```

Listing the status of an individual service using the svcs command

Common usage examples:

svcs	Display all active services
svcs -a	Display all services
svcs [SERVICE]	Display the specified service
svcs -d [SERVICE]	Display the specified service's dependencies
svcs -D [SERVICE]	Display services that depend on the specified service
svcs -l [SERVICE]	Display detailed information about the specified service

svcadm

Purpose: Start/stop services on Solaris systems.

Usage syntax:! dbe ! \PQUJPOT^! \TFSWJDF^

```
# svcadm enable sendmail
# svcs sendmail
TUBUF!!!!!!!!!! TUJNF!!!! GNSJ!
!!!!!!!!!! 25;37;25!     d;0             0             ;     e b !
```

Starting a service with the svcadm command

The **svcadm** command controls services on Solaris systems. It can be used to start, stop, and restart services. In the above example, the **enable** parameter is used to start the sendmail service. The next example demonstrates using the **disable** parameter to stop the sendmail service.

```
# svcadm disable sendmail
# svcs sendmail
TUBUF!!!!!!!!!! TUJNF!!!! GNSJ!
e bc e!!!!!!!!!! 25;38;62!     d;0             0             ;     e b !
```

Stopping a service with the svcadm command

To restart a service, use the **restart** parameter as demonstrated in the next example.

```
# svcadm restart sendmail
```

Restarting a service with the svcadm command

Common usage examples:

svcadm enable [SERVICE]	Start the specified service
svcadm disable [SERVICE]	Stop the specified service
svcadm restart [SERVICE]	Restart the specified service

Section 8:

Network Commands

Overview

This section covers basic networking utilities and configuration commands found on most platforms. It also provides an overview of remote access to network-based services like SSH, NFS, and FTP.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
<code>hostname</code>	Display the system's host name.
<code>ifconfig</code>	Display network interfaces.
<code>ifup</code> <code>ifdown</code>	Enable/disable network interfaces.
<code>iwconfig</code>	Display wireless network interfaces.
<code>ethtool</code>	Display and edit ethernet card settings.
<code>arp</code>	Display the ARP cache.
<code>ping</code>	Send ICMP echo requests to network hosts.
<code>tracert</code>	Display TCP/IP routing information.
<code>tracert</code>	Display TCP/IP routing information on Linux systems.
<code>nslookup</code>	Perform DNS lookups on Unix systems.
<code>dig</code>	Perform DNS lookups on BSD and Linux systems.
<code>host</code>	Simple DNS lookup utility.
<code>whois</code>	Lookup domain name registry information in the whois database.
<code>netstat</code>	Display network connections, statistics, and routing information.
<code>route</code>	Display and configure TCP/IP routes.
<code>ifstat</code>	Display network interface statistics.
<code>tcpdump</code>	Display raw traffic on a network interface.
<code>dhclient</code>	DHCP client for Linux and BSD systems.
<code>nmap</code>	Scan TCP/IP ports on network systems.
<code>telnet</code>	Client for connecting to remote servers via the telnet protocol.
<code>ssh</code>	Client for connecting to remote servers via the SSH protocol.

(Continued...)

Command	Purpose
minicom	Serial communication application.
mail	Send email to local and remote users.
ftp	Transfer files using FTP (File Transfer Protocol).
wget	File download utility for Linux systems.
showmount	Display NFS mount and export information.

Glossary of terms used in this section:

ARP	(Address Resolution Protocol) Protocol for resolving MAC addresses.
DHCP	(Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) Protocol for automatically assigning IP addresses.
DNS	(Domain Name System) System that resolves host names to IP addresses.
FTP	(File Transfer Protocol) Protocol used to transfer files to and from remote systems.
Hostname	The name assigned to a computer system.
ICMP	(Internet Control Message Protocol) Protocol used to relay error messages to network systems.
Loopback	A virtual network interface found on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems used to communicate with network services on the local machine.
MAC Address	(Media Access Control Address) A unique identifier assigned to network interfaces.
NFS	(Network File System) Protocol used to share storage via a network on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems.
Packet	A unit of data transmitted between network systems.
Route	The path a packet travels across a network to the destination.
Serial	A legacy form of communication used to link devices together.
Telnet	A legacy protocol for connecting to remote systems.
SSH	(Secure SHell) A secure protocol for connecting to remote systems.

hostname

Purpose: Display the system's host name.

Usage syntax: `hostname [-b] [-d] [-f] [-i] [-s] [-t] [-T] [-x] [-y] [-Z]`

```
# hostname
b !
```

Displaying the system's hostname

The **hostname** command displays the name assigned to the local system. The above example demonstrates the typical output of the **hostname** command.

hostname can also be used to display the system's domain name as demonstrated in the next example.

```
# hostname -d
e b /d !
```

Displaying the system's domain name

Using the **-f** option, you can see the the system's FQDN (**F**ully **Q**ualified **D**omain **N**ame) as show in the below example.

```
# hostname -f
b / e b /d !
```

Displaying the system's FQDN

Note

Host name configuration is stored in `/etc/hostname` on most systems.

Common usage examples:

hostname	Display the system's host name
hostname -d	Display the system's domain name
hostname -f	Display the system's fully qualified domain name

ifconfig

Purpose: Display network interfaces.

Usage syntax: `d ! \PQUJPOT^! \JOUFSGBDF^`

```
$ ifconfig -a
1!!!!!! M ! db ;F !!IXbee !11;32;81;bd; 8; 8!!!
!!!!!!!!!! ! bee ;21/21/2/211!! Cdb ;21/21/2/366!! Nb ;366/366/366/1
!!!!!!!!!! 7! bee ;! 91;;332;81 ; bd; 8 8075! Td ;M
!!!!!!!!!! VQ! CSPBEDBTU! SVOOJOH! NVMUJDBTU! NUV;2611!! N d;2
!!!!!!!!!! SY! bd ;3;48! ;! e e;! ;! b ;1
!!!!!!!!!! UY! bd ;3199! ;! e e;! ;! db ;1
!!!!!!!!!! d ;! ;2111
!!!!!!!!!! SY! c ;32::918! )3/2! NC*! UY! c ;65994:! )659/9! LC*
!!!!!!!!!! N ; 7 1111. 8111111
!
!!!!!!!!!! M ! db ;M db ! M cbd !!!
!!!!!!!!!! ! bee ;238/1/1/2!! Nb ;366/1/1/1
!!!!!!!!!! 7! bee ;! ;;20239! Td ;I
!!!!!!!!!! VQ! MPPQCBDL! SVOOJOH! NUV;27547!! N d;2
!!!!!!!!!! SY! bd ;427! ;! e e;! ;! b ;1
!!!!!!!!!! UY! bd ;427! ;! e e;! ;! db ;1
!!!!!!!!!! d ;! ;1
!!!!!!!!!! SY! c ;37663! )37/6! LC*! UY! c ;37663! )37/6! LC*
```

Using the ifconfig command to display network interfaces

The **ifconfig** command displays the system's network interface configuration. The output of **ifconfig** displays information such as IP address, MAC address, and interface statistical counters, as shown in the above example.

The most common type of network interface is a standard ethernet card. This interface is usually designated as `eth0` or `eth1`. Systems with multiple network cards will have `eth0`, `eth1`, `eth2`, etc.

Note

The loopback interface () is present on all Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. It is critical for normal system operations and should not be disabled or modified. This interface will always have an IP address of 127.0.0.1.

Common usage examples:

ifconfig

Display enabled network interfaces

```
ifconfig -a
```

Display all network interfaces

```
ifconfig [INTERFACE]
```

Display the specified network interface

ifup / ifdown

Purpose: Enable/disable network interfaces.

Usage syntax: `ifup [INTERFACE]`

```
# ifup eth0
```

Enabling a network interface using the ifup command

ifup enables a network interface. In the above example the interface `eth0` is enabled. After executing the **ifup** command, the `eth0` interface is activated and available for use.

ifdown disables network interfaces. This takes the specified interface offline and makes it unavailable for use. The next example demonstrates using **ifdown** to shutdown the `eth0` interface.

Usage syntax: `ifdown [INTERFACE]`

```
# ifdown eth0
```

Disabling a network interface using the ifdown command

Note

Some systems may designate ethernet interfaces as `ens1` instead of `eth1`.

Common usage examples:

<code>ifup [INTERFACE]</code>	Enable the specified network interface
<code>ifup -a</code>	Enable all network interfaces
<code>ifdown [INTERFACE]</code>	Disable the specified network interface
<code>ifdown -a</code>	Disable all network interfaces

iwconfig

Purpose: Display wireless network interfaces.

Usage syntax: `iwconfig [interface] [options]`

```
$ iwconfig
b 1!! JFFF! 913/22bc !!FTTJE;# . b #!!!
!!!!N e ;Nb b e!!G d ;3/548! HI !!Bdd ! Q ;! 11;25;CG;F5;2C;F3!
!!!!C !Sb >65! Nc0 !!!U .Q >26! eC !!!
!!!!S ! ! ;8!!!SUT! ; !!!G b ! >3463! C!!!
!!!!Q !Nb b ;
!!!!M !R b >:80211!!T b ! ;. 63! eC !!O ! >.:2! eC
!!!!S ! b e! e;1!!S ! b e! d ;1!!S ! b e! b ;1
!!!!U ! d ! ;1!!J b e! d;1!!!N e! c bd ;1
```

Displaying wireless network interfaces using the iwconfig command

iwconfig displays wireless network interfaces on Linux systems. It is similar to the previously discussed **ifconfig** command, except it displays information specific to wireless networks.

In the above example the information for the `b 1` interface is displayed. It shows information such as signal level, noise level, and transmission rate for the connected wireless network.

Common usage examples:

iwconfig	Display all wireless network interfaces
iwconfig [INTERFACE]	Display the specified wireless network interface

ethtool

Purpose: Display ethernet card settings.

Usage syntax: ! \PQUJPOT^! \JOUFSGBDF^

```
# ethtool eth0
T      !      !      1;!
!!!!!!!!!!T      e!      ;! \ UQ ^!
!!!!!!!!!!T      e!      ! e ;!!! 21cb U0Ib ! 21cb U0G !
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 211cb U0Ib ! 211cb U0G !
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 211cb U0G !
!!!!!!!!!!T      ! b .      b ;! Z !
!!!!!!!!!!Be     e!      ! e ;!! 21cb U0Ib ! 21cb U0G !
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 211cb U0Ib ! 211cb U0G !
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 211cb U0G !
!!!!!!!!!!Be     e! b !      b ! ;! O !
!!!!!!!!!!Be     e! b .      b ;! Z !
!!!!!!!!!!M      ! b      !be     e!      ! e ;!! O !      e!
!!!!!!!!!!M      ! b      !be     e! b !      b ! ;! O !
!!!!!!!!!!M      ! b      !be     e! b .      b ;! O !
!!!!!!!!!!T      e;! 211Nc0 !
//A
```

Typical output of the ethtool command

ethtool is a Linux utility for displaying information about network interfaces. The default output displays advanced network interface settings as displayed in the above example. It can also be used to display network statistics using the **-S** parameter as shown in the next example.

```
# ethntool -S eth0
OJD!      b      d  !;
!!!!!!    ` bd      !; 236!
!!!!!!    ` bd      !; 225!
!!!!!!    ` c      !; 2556:!
!!!!!!    ` c      !; 286: 7!
!!!!!!    ` c  bedb !; :!
!!!!!!    ` c  bedb !; 4!
!!!!!!    `      db  !; 25!
!!!!!!    `      db  !; 2:!!
!!!!!!    `              !; 1!
//^
```

Displaying interface statistics using the -S parameter

Common usage examples:

ethtool [INTERFACE]

Display network interface settings

ethtool -S [INTERFACE]

Display network interface statistics

arp

Purpose: Display the ARP cache.

Usage syntax: `! b ! \PQUJPOT^`

```
$ arp
Bee      !!!!!!!!! IX      !! IXbee      !!!!!!!!! G b !Nb !!!!!!!!! J bd !
21 /21 /3 /2! !!!!!      !!! 11;17;C2;23;1E;27!! D! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2!
21 /21 /3 /6! !!!!!      !!! 11;25;33;1F;46;6D!! D! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2!
21 /21 /3 /7! !!!!!      !!! 11;1D;3: ;2F;21;81!! D! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2!
21 /21 /3 /8! !!!!!      !!! 11;1D;3: ;D2;13;D1!! D! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2!
21 /21 /3 /21! !!!!!      !!! 11;1D;3: ;49;11;G7!! D! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2!
```

Output of the arp command

The **arp** command displays the ARP cache. Local networks use ARP to communicate with neighboring systems. The ARP protocol resolves an IP address to the MAC address of the destination system. Resolved addresses are stored in a cache which can be displayed using the **arp** command, as shown in the above example.

Common usage examples:

arp | Display the address resolution protocol cache

ping

Purpose: Send ICMP echo requests to network hosts.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \IPTU^`

```
$ ping -c 5 10.10.1.1
QJOH! 21/21/2/2! )21/21/2/2*! 67)95*! c      !      ! eb b/!
75! c      !      ! 21/21/2/2;! d `      >2!      >75!      >1/397!      !
75! c      !      ! 21/21/2/2;! d `      >3!      >75!      >1/346!      !
75! c      !      ! 21/21/2/2;! d `      >4!      >75!      >1/343!      !
75! c      !      ! 21/21/2/2;! d `      >5!      >75!      >1/323!      !
75! c      !      ! 21/21/2/2;! d `      >6!      >75!      >1/327!      !
...! 21/21/2/2!      ! b      d !...!
6! bd      ! b      e-! 6! d      e-! 1&! bd      !      -!      ! 5113      !
```

Using the ping command to ping a network host

The **ping** command sends ICMP echo requests to network hosts. This can be helpful when troubleshooting network connectivity problems. In the above example, executing **ping -c 5** sends five ping packets to the host with the IP address of 10.10.1.1.

Note

If the **-c** parameter is omitted, the **ping** command will continue until interrupted (by pressing **CTRL + C**).

Tip

The **ping6** command is used to ping IP version 6 hosts.

Common usage examples:

ping [HOST]	Ping the specified host
ping -c [NUM] [HOST]	Send the specified number of ICMP packets
ping -f [HOST]	Perform a rapid (flood) ping

traceroute

Purpose: Display TCP/IP routing information.

Usage syntax: `bd ! \PQUJPOT^! \IPTU^`

```
$ traceroute -n www.google.com
  bd      !      !      /      /d      ! )85/236/:6/214*-! 41!      ! b -! 71! c      !
  bd      !
! 2! ! 2: 3 /279 /2/365! ! 4 /745!      !! 4 /869!      !! 5 /622!      !
! 3! ! :: /71 /43 /3! ! 36 /4: 9!      !! 38 /583!      !! 39 /151!      !
! 4! ! 87 /2: 7 /283 /5! ! 39 /372!      !! 39 /84: !      !! 39 /: 37!      !
! 5! ! 262 /275 /: 5 /63! ! 3: /168!      !! 3: /694!      !! 3: /935!      !
! 6! ! 7: /331 /9 /68! ! 4: /756!      ! +! ! 51 /566!      !
! 7! ! 83 /25 /2: 8 /224! ! 52 /572!      !! 4: /645!      !! 4: /: : 6!      !
! 8! ! 83 /25 /344 /78! ! 4: /548!      ! 83 /25 /344 /76! ! 42 /678!      !! 47 /744!      !
! 9! ! 327 /34: /58 /232! ! 53 /742!      !! 54 /3: 9!      ! 327 /34: /58 /242! ! 55 /75: !      !
//^
```

Using traceroute to display the route of TCP/IP packets

The **traceroute** command traces the path that packets travel in TCP/IP networks. The above example demonstrates using the **traceroute** command to display the network route to `www.google.com`. Routers (AKA hops) along the network path are identified, along with a response time (in milliseconds).

Tip

*The **traceroute6** command is used to trace IP version 6 hosts.*

Common usage examples:

<code>traceroute [HOST]</code>	Trace the route to the specified host
<code>traceroute -n [HOST]</code>	Do not lookup DNS names when tracing

tracpath

Purpose: Display TCP/IP routing information on Linux systems.

Usage syntax: `! bd b ! \PQUJPOT^! \IPTU^`

```
$ tracpath -n www.google.com
! 2;! 2: 3 /279 /2 /75!!!!!! 1 /318 ! ! 2611!
! 2;! 2: 3 /279 /2 /365!!!!!! 2 /593 !!
! 2;! 2: 3 /279 /2 /365!!!!!! 2 /374 !!
! 3;! :: /71 /43 /3!!!!!! 38 /587 !!
! 4;! 87 /2: 7 /283 /5!!!!!! 38 /338 !!
! 5;! 262 /275 /: 5 /63!!!!!! 38 /539 !!
! 6;! 7: /331 /9 /68!!!!!! 48 /579 ! b !! 8!
! 7;! ! !
! 8;! ! !
! 9;! ! !
///
```

Using the tracpath command to display routing paths

The **tracpath** command is a replacement for the **traceroute** command on Linux systems. You can use either program on Linux, but many distributions only include **tracpath** by default. The above example demonstrates using **tracpath** to display the route to www.google.com.

Tip

The **tracpath6** command is used to trace IP version 6 hosts.

Common usage examples:

tracpath [HOST]

Trace the path to the specified host

tracpath -n [HOST]

Do not lookup DNS names when tracing

nslookup

Purpose: Perform DNS lookups on Unix systems.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \IPTU^`

```
$ nslookup www.dontfearthecommandline.com
T      ;!!      79 /216 /39 /25!
Bee    ;!      79 /216 /39 /25$64!
!
O .b      b      ! b      ;!
Ob ;! e      b      d      b e      /d !
Bee      ;! 75 /313 /29: /28!!
```

Using the nslookup command to resolve a domain name

The **nslookup** command performs DNS lookup queries. It resolves DNS names to IP addresses and is helpful for troubleshooting network name resolution problems. In the above example, the IP address of the specified host is resolved and displayed.

Note

nslookup is considered to be a legacy program and has been replaced by more modern commands such as **dig** (see page 150) and **host** (see page 151) on many systems.

Common usage examples:

nslookup [HOST] | Resolve the specified host name

dig

Purpose: Perform DNS lookups on BSD and Linux systems.

Usage syntax: ! e ! \PQUJPOT^! \IPTU^

```
$ dig dontfearthecommandline.com
< ==??! E H! : /6/2. Q3! ==??! e      b      d      b e      /d !
<<      cb!      ;!!      d e!
<< H ! b      ;!
<< .??! IFBEFS==.!      d e ;! RVFSZ-!      b      ;! OPFSSPS-! e;! 3184:!
<<      b      ;!      ! e! b< RVFSZ ;! 2-! BOTXFS ;! 2-! BVUIPSJUJ ;! 1-! BEEJUJPOBM;! 1!
!
<< RVFTUJPO! TFDUJPO;!
<e      b      d      b e      /d      /! JO!      B!
!
<< BOTXFS! TFDUJPO;!
e      b      d      b e      /d      /! 3792! JO!      B!      75/313/29: /281!
!
<< R      !      ;! 5!      d!
<< TFSWFS ;! 21/21/2/55$64 )21/21/2/55*!
<< XIFO;! N      ! K      !! 2! 16;49;51! 311:!
<< NTH! TJ! F! !      d e;! 7!!
```

Typical output of the dig command

The **dig** command performs DNS queries on Linux and BSD systems. It is a modern replacement for the **nslookup** command. The above example demonstrates the typical usage of the **dig** command.

Common usage examples:

dig [HOST]	Display DNS information for the specified host
dig -t MX [HOST]	Display the mail server for the specified host
dig -t NS [HOST]	Display the name server for the specified host

host

Purpose: Simple DNS lookup utility.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \IPTU^`

```
$ host dontfearthecommandline.com
e      b      d      b e      /d ! b ! bee      ! 75/313/29: /281!
e      b      d      b e      /d ! b ! ! b e e! c ! 1!      / d      / !
e      b      d      b e      /d ! b ! ! b e e! c ! 21!
b      2/ d      /      /!
```

Resolving a name using the host command

The **host** command is a simple DNS lookup utility for Unix and Linux systems. It is similar to the **nslookup** and **dig** utilities, except it provides user friendly output that is easier to read and understand. The above example displays a sample of the output produced by the **host** command.

The **-t** option can be used with the **host** command to lookup other information about the domain such as the mail server (**-t MX**) and name server (**-t NS**) as shown in the next example.

```
$ host -t MX dontfearthecommandline.com
e      b      d      b e      /d ! b ! ! b e e! c ! 21!
b      2/ d      /      /!
e      b      d      b e      /d ! b ! ! b e e! c ! 1!      / d      / !
$ host -t NS dontfearthecommandline.com
e      b      d      b e      /d ! b !      ! 47/e b d      /d /!
e      b      d      b e      /d ! b !      ! 46/e b d      /d /!
```

Resolving MX and NS records using the host command

Common usage examples:

- `host [HOST]`

Display DNS information for the specified host
- `host -t MX [HOST]`

Display the mail server for the specified host
- `host`

whois

Purpose: Lookup domain name registry information in the WHOIS database.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \EPNBJO^`

```
$ whois google.com
S      b  ;!
!!!!!!!E  !Be
!!!!!!!H      ! J d/
!!!!!!!Q  b  !d  bd!d  bd .be  A      /d  !!
!!!!!!!2711!B      b  !Qb  b
!!!!!!!N      b  !W  !DB! :5154
!!!!!!!e  .be  A      /d  !,2/761++++++! Gb  ;! ,2/761++++++
!!!!E  b  !Ob  ;!      /d
!!!!!!!S      b!Ob  ;!Nb      /d
!!!!!!!S      b!X  ;!      / b      /d
!!!!!!!S      b!I  b  ;!      ;00  / b      /d
!!!!D  b  e!  ////////////;! 2::8.1:.26/
!!!!F      !  ////////////;! 3122.1:.24/
!!!!S d  e!  b  !  eb  e!  //;! 3119.17.19/
!!!!E  b  !      !  !      e!  e  ;
!!!! 2/      /d  ! 3/      /d  !
///
```

Using the **whois** command to query domain information

The **whois** command is used to query an internet registry and display information about the registrant of a domain name. In the above example, the **whois** command displays information for google.com.

Tip

You can also use the **whois** command to lookup information about an IP address by executing **whois [IP ADDRESS]**.

Common usage examples:

whois [DOMAIN]

Display information about a domain's registrant

whois [IP ADDRESS]

Display information about the owner of an IP address

netstat

Purpose: Display network connections, statistics, and routing information.

Usage syntax: `b ! \PQUJPOT^`

```
# netstat!
Bd      !J      !d      d      ! ) 0 !      *!
Q      !S d .R! T   e.R! M db !Bee      !!!G      !Bee      !!!!!T b  !
d !!!!!!! 1!!!! 574!! 21/21/3/5;221!!! 23/296/:3/289;616:9!! FTUBCMJTIFE!
d !!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 1! 21/21/3/5;221!!! 77/214/234/245;2513!! UJNF` XBJU!
d !!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 1! 238/1/1/2;2114! 238/1/1/2;64152!!!! FTUBCMJTIFE!
d !!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 1! 238/1/1/2;21136! 238/1/1/2;49851!!!! UJNF` XBJU!
d !!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 83!! 21/21/3/5;33!!!! 21/21/2/362;61193!!!! FTUBCMJTIFE!
//A
```

Default output of the netstat command

netstat is a helpful utility that displays network status information. Executing **netstat** with no options will display all active network connections on the local system, as show in the above example. It can also be used to display detailed network statistics using the **-s** option, as shown in the next example.

```
# netstat -s
J ;!
!!!! 311215489!      b ! bd      ! d      e!
!!!! !!      b e e!
!!!! !!      d      ! bd      ! e db e e!
!!!! 311215429!      d      ! bd      ! e      e!
!!!! 36954: 799!      !      !      !
///
```

Using the -s option to display network statistics with netstat

The **-rn** option is another helpful feature that displays TCP/IP routing tables.

```
$ netstat -r
L      ! JQ!      ! bc  !
E      b      !!Hb  b !!!!!H  b !!!!!!!G b !!NTT!X  e  !!      ! J bd !
21/21/3/1!!!! 1/1/1/1!!!! 366/366/1! V!!!!!!! 1! 1!!!!!! 1!      1!
1/1/1/1!!!!!! 21/21/3/2!!!! 1/1/1/1!!!!!! V!!!!!!!! 1! 1!!!!!! 1!      1!
```

Displaying routing tables with netstat

Common usage examples:

netstat	Display active network connections
netstat -s	Display network statistics
netstat -r	Display routing information

route

Purpose: Display and configure TCP/IP routes.

Usage syntax:! ! \PQUJPOT^

```
$ route -n
L      ! JQ!      ! bc !
E      b      !!!!Hb      b!!!!!!!H      b      !!!!!!!G b      !N      d!S      !V      !J      bd !
2: 3/279/212/1! 1/1/1/1!!!!!! 366/366/366/1! V!!!! 1!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 1!      b 1!
21 21/2/2/1!!!! 1/1/1/1!!!!!! 366/366/366/1! V!!!! 1!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 1!      1!
1/1/1/1!!!!!! 21/21/2/2!!!!! 1/1/1/1!!!!!! V!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 1!      1!
1/1/1/1!!!!!! 2: 3/279/212/2! 1/1/1/1!!!!!! V!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 1!      b 1!
```

Displaying routing tables

The **route** command displays and configures network routes. In the above example, executing **route -n** displays the local system's routing table.

The **add** and **del** options can be used to add or delete static routes as shown in the next example.

```
# route add -net 10.10.2.0/24 gw 10.10.1.1 eth0
# route del -net 10.10.2.0/24
```

Adding and removing static TCP/IP routes

Common usage examples:

route -n	Display routing tables
route add [ROUTE]	Add the specified static route
route del [ROUTE]	Delete the specified static route

ifstat

Purpose: Display network interface statistics.

Usage syntax: `b ! \EFMBZ ^! \DPVOU^`

```
$ ifstat 2 10
!!!!!!      2!
! LC0 !    !! LC0 !    !
!!!! 1 /13! !!!!! 1 /15!
!!!! 1 /13! !!!!! 1 /15!
!!!! 21 /79! !!!!! 1 /97!
!!!! 55 /5: !!!!! 3 /: 4!
!!!! 4 /56! !!!!! 8 /: 6!
!!!! 3 /44! !!!!! 59 /57!
!!!! 1 /51! !!!!! 1 /97!
!!!! 1 /15! !!!!! 1 /22!
!!!! 4 /37! !!!!! 1 /69!
!!!! 1 /13! !!!!! 1 /15!
```

Displaying network interface statistics using ifstat

ifstat displays network interface statistics. It can be used to monitor network interface activity over a period of time. In the above example, executing **ifstat 2 10** displays interface statistics every two seconds for ten iterations.

tcpdump

Purpose: Displays raw traffic on a network interface.

Usage syntax: `! d e ! \PQUJPOT^`

```
# tcpdump
! ! 1-! . ! FO21NC! )F *! db ! ! :7! c !
16;6:;16/138218! b ! . b ! 21/21/2/353! ! .dbe23.
12/e b d b e /d !
16;6:;16/139372! JQ e . d .38/e b d b e /d /61::!?!
d b .12/e b d b e /d /e b ;! :565,! QUS@!
353/2/21/21/ .bee /b b/! )53*!
16;6:;16/13956:! b ! . b!e . d .38/e b d b e /d !
! d b .12/e b d b e /d !
16;6:;16/139586! b ! !e . d .38/e b d b e /d ! .b !
11;32;81;bd; 8; 8! ) !V *!
//!
29! bd ! db e!
414! bd ! d e! c ! !
1! bd !e e! c ! !
```

Using the tcpdump command to capture network traffic

tcpdump displays network packets sent and received to and from the local system. It can be helpful in monitoring network conditions or troubleshooting connectivity problems.

In the above example, **tcpdump** captures network traffic on the `! !` interface. Information on each packet is then displayed on the screen. The capture will continue until interrupted (by pressing **CTRL + C**).

Tip

*Output from **tcpdump** can be difficult to interpret. A free utility called Wireshark is available that can be used to import **tcpdump** packet captures for easy viewing. Wireshark is available for Linux, Mac OS X, and Windows systems. Visit www.wireshark.com for more information.*

Common usage examples:

<code>tcpdump</code>	Display network traffic on the screen
<code>tcpdump > [FILE]</code>	Save the packet capture to a file
<code>tcpdump -i [INTERFACE]</code>	Capture traffic on the specified interface
<code>tcpdump -vv</code>	Display verbose packet information
<code>tcpdump -c [COUNT]</code>	Stop after receiving the specified number of packets

dhclient

Purpose: DHCP client for Linux and BSD systems.

Usage syntax: `dhclient [interface]`

```
# dhclient eth0
M      !      ! MQG0      1011;32;81;bd; 8; 8!
T e    !      !!! MQG0      1011;32;81;bd; 8; 8!
T e    !      !!! T d      0 b      cbd !
EIDQSFVFTU!      ! 21/21/2/211!      !      ! 366/366/366/366!      ! 78!
EIDQBDL!      ! 21/21/2/211!      ! 21/21/2/56!
c      e!      ! 21/21/2/211!..!      b!      ! 482:4!      d e /
```

Using dhclient to request a DHCP address

dhclient is a client for requesting an IP address from a DHCP server. The above example demonstrates using the **dhclient** command to request an IP address for the `eth0` interface.

Tip

To release a DHCP address, execute **dhclient -r** on the command line.

Common usage examples:

dhclient [INTERFACE]	Request an IP address from the DHCP server
dhclient -r [INTERFACE]	Release an assigned IP address

nmap

Purpose: Scan TCP/IP ports on network systems.

telnet

Purpose: Client for connecting to remote servers via the telnet protocol.

Usage syntax: `telnet [HOST] [PORT]`

```
$ telnet myserver
Trying 192.168.1.1...
Connected to myserver.
Escape character is '^Z'.
b      e;! ++++++!
%!
```

Connecting to a remote system using the telnet command

The **telnet** command is used to connect to remote systems via the telnet protocol. The above example demonstrates connecting to a remote system using **telnet**. Once connected to the remote system you can execute commands as if you were logged into the system locally.

Note

Telnet is an insecure legacy protocol and has largely been replaced by SSH for security reasons. Usernames, passwords, and other sensitive information transmitted via telnet are sent in plain text making it very easy for hackers to capture. Avoid using telnet whenever possible, especially when communicating over untrusted networks such as the internet.

Common usage examples:

telnet [HOST] | Start a telnet session to a remote system

ssh

Purpose: Client for connecting to remote servers via the SSH protocol.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \IPTU^`

```
$ ssh myserver
d A      ( ! b      e;! ++++++!
$
```

Using the ssh command to connect to a remote system

The **ssh** command is used to connect to remote systems via the SSH protocol. SSH creates an encrypted connection between two systems and provides a secure channel for communication. This helps prevent "man in the middle" hackers from being able to capture sensitive information (such as usernames and passwords) when connecting to remote systems.

Tip

PuTTY, a free SSH and telnet client for Windows, can be downloaded at www.chiark.greenend.org.uk/~sgtatham/putty/. This allows you to connect to remote Unix, Linux, and BSD servers directly from Windows systems.

Common usage examples:

ssh [HOST]	Start an SSH session to a remote system
ssh -l [USER] [HOST]	Login as the specified user on the target system
ssh -C [HOST]	Enable compression (for slow connections)

minicom

Purpose: Serial communication application.

Usage syntax:! `d ! \PQUJPOT^`

[illegible]

Using minicom to connect to a serial console device

minicom is a serial communication utility for BSD and Linux systems. It can be used to connect to serial devices (like routers and switches) via the command line. The example above demonstrates using **minicom** to connect to a serial attached Cisco router.

Tip

Press **CTRL + A** then **Z** for a **minicom** help summary. To exit **minicom**, press **CTRL + A** then **X**.

Common usage examples:

minicom	Connect to the default serial device
minicom -s	Edit minicom settings

mail

Purpose: Send email to local and remote users.

Usage syntax: `mail [-b | -i | -s | -f] [-s SUBJECT] [-f FILE] [-b ADDRESS]`

```
$ mail grepnick@gmail.com
T c d ;! I !
Xb ! ! ! ! ! bd @!
<CTRL + D>
```

Sending an email message with the mail command

The **mail** command sends email messages. In the above example, a new email message is created and addressed to the specified recipient. After pressing enter, the mail client will prompt you for a subject for the message. Pressing enter again will start the body of the message. Pressing **CTRL + D** exits the mail client and sends the message.

Tip

Press **CTRL + C** twice to cancel editing and discard a mail message (without sending).

A text file can be substituted for the body of an email message. In the next example, the text in the `message.txt` file will be sent as the body of the message.

```
$ mail -s "Hello" grepnick@gmail.com < message.txt
```

Using a text file as a message body

Common usage examples:

mail

mail [ADDRESS]

mail [ADDRESS] < [FILE]

**mail -s "[SUBJECT]" **
[ADDRESS]

Check for new email

Start a new message to the specified address

Use the specified file as the message body

Specify a message subject on the command line

ftp

Purpose: Transfer files using FTP (File Transfer Protocol).

Usage syntax: `ftp -u <user> -s <script> -P <port> -c <command>`

```
# ftp 10.10.1.48
```

```
D      d e!  ! 21/21/2/59/!
```

```
Ob  ! )21/21/2/59*;!  d !
```

```
Qb      e;! +++++++!
```

```
341! M      !  dd      /!
```

```
S      !      !      !  ! VOJY/!
```

```
V      !c b !  e !  !  b      !      /!
```

```
?!
```

Connecting to an FTP server using the ftp command

The **ftp** command transfers files using the FTP protocol. The above example demonstrates using the **ftp** command to connect to

wget

Purpose: File download utility for Linux systems.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \TPVSD^`

[illegible]

Downloading a file from the internet with the wget command

wget is a file download utility for the command line. It can be used to download files via HTTP and FTP protocols. In the above example, a file is downloaded from a remote HTTP system and saved in the current directory.

Tip

Use the `--user=[USERNAME]` and `--password=[PASSWORD]` options to specify a username and password to used when connecting to the remote system.

Common usage examples:

```
wget http://[HOST/FILE] | Download the specified file via HTTP
```

wget ftp://[HOST/FILE]	Download the specified file via FTP
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------

showmount

Purpose: Display NFS mount and export information.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^`

```
# showmount
I      !      !      d.12;!
21/21/2/59!
```

Displaying connected NFS clients using the showmount command

The **showmount** command displays information about an NFS server running on the local system. The above example demonstrates using **showmount** to display a list of clients currently connected to the NFS server.

The next example demonstrates using the **-e** option to display the NFS server's export list.

```
# showmount -e
F      !      !      !      d.12;!
0      ! 21/21/2/10366/366/366/1!
```

Displaying a list of exported directories

The **-d** option is used to display a list of exported directories that are currently in use, as shown in the next example.

```
# showmount -d
E      d      !      !      d.12;!
0      !
```

Displaying a list of exported directories that are currently in use

Common usage examples:

showmount	Display NFS clients currently connected to the server
showmount -e	Display the NFS server's exported directories
showmount -d	List exported directories that are currently in use
showmount -a	Display NFS clients and the directories they have mounted

Section 9:

Hardware Management Commands

Overview

Commands in this section cover basic Unix, Linux, and BSD hardware management utilities. These commands can be used to identify, configure, and troubleshoot system devices.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
<code>lshw</code>	List hardware on Linux systems.
<code>ioscan</code>	List hardware on HP-UX systems.
<code>lsdev</code>	List hardware on AIX systems.
<code>lspci</code>	List PCI devices on Linux systems.
<code>pciconf</code>	List PCI devices on BSD systems.
<code>lsusb</code>	List USB devices on Linux systems.
<code>dmidecode</code>	Display detailed information about devices on the system.
<code>hdparm</code>	Display/set hard drive parameters on Linux systems.
<code>eject</code>	Unload removable media.

Glossary of terms used in this section:

IDE	(Integrated Drive Electronics) Legacy interface used to link disk drives to a computer.
PCI	(Peripheral Component Interconnect) Interface used to connect internal devices to a computer.
SATA	(Serial Advanced Technology Attachment) Modern interface used to link disk drives to a computer.
USB	(Universal Serial Bus) Interface used to connect external devices to a computer.

lshw

Purpose: List hardware on Linux systems.

Usage syntax: ! \PQUJPOT^

```
# lshw -short
IOX! b !!!!!!!E d!!!D b !!!!!!!E d      !
>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!         !!!!! P   Q   !HY63!!
0l!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!c  !!!!!!!!!! 1XH344!
010l!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!        !!!!! 75L C! CJPT!
01051l!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!     d       !!! J    )S*! Q                )S*! 5! DQV! 4/11HI !
010511081l!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!          !!!!! 27L C! M2! dbd  !
0105110812!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!          !!!!! 3N C! M3! dbd  !
01051101/2!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!         d       !!! M    db ! DQV!
01051101/3!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!         d       !!! M    db ! DQV!
010211l!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!            !!!!! 3H C! T           !N       !
010211101!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!          !!!!! 2H C! EJNN! EES! T    d             ! 644! NI  !
//^
```

Output of the lshw command using the -short option

The **lsbw** command lists information about all hardware installed on Linux systems. In the above example, the **-short** option is used to provide a simple listing of hardware detected on the local system. Omitting the **-short** option will display a detailed listing of devices, as demonstrated in the next example.

```
# lshw
d.12!
!!!! e d ;! N ! U ! D !
!!!! e d ;! P Q ! HY631!
!!!! e ;! E ! J d/!
!!!! b ;! ++++++!
!!!! e ;! 43! c !
!!!! db bc ;! c .3/4! e .3/4! .2/5! !
!!!! d b ;! be b ` b e> bc e! c > b !
d b > . ! d >2!
!!+.d !
!!!!!!! e d ;! N c b e!
!!!!!!! e d ;! 1XH344!
!!!!!!! e ;! E ! J d/!
//^
```

Default output of the lshw command

Common usage examples:

lshw	Display a detailed hardware listing
lshw -short	Display a simple hardware listing

ioscan

Purpose: List hardware on HP-UX systems.

Usage syntax: db ! \PQUJPOT^

```
# ioscan
I0X! Qb !!!! D b !!!!!!!!!!!!!!! E d      !
>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>
!!!!!!!!!!!! cd!
9!!!!!!!!!!!! cd!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! J0P! Beb    !
901!!!!!!!!!!!! `c !!!!!!!!!!!!! HTD! bee.   !Gb  0X e ! TDTJ! J         bd !
901/6!!!!!!!!!!!! b     !
901/6 /1!!!!!!!!!!!! e   !!!!!!!!!!!!! TFBHBUF! TU45482X!
901/8!!!!!!!!!!!! b     !
901/8 /1!!!!!!!!!!!! d   !!!!!!!!!!!!! J     b     !
901/9!!!!!!!!!!!! b     !
901/9 /1!!!!!!!!!!!! e   !!!!!!!!!!!!! TFBHBUF! TU429547MD!
905!!!!!!!!!!!! cb!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! QDJ! C !C e  !.!HTD  QDJ!
9050201!!!!!!!!!!!! b!!!!!!!!!!!! IQ K4626B! ITD! 210211Cb .UY! E.D b   !
2!       !
9027!!!!!!!!!!!! cb!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! D     ! J0P! Beb    !
902701!!!!!!!!!!!! `c !!!!!!!!!!!!! C     .  !Qb b    !J        bd !
902705!!!!!!!!!!!!          !!!!!!!!!!!!! C     .  !ST.343D!
902706!!!!!!!!!!!! `c !!!!!!!!!!!!! C     .  !TDTJ!
902706 /1!!!!!!!!!!!! b     !
902706 /1 /1!!!!!!!!!!!! b   !!!!!!! IQ!!!!!! D2648B!
902706 /3!!!!!!!!!!!! b     !
902706 /3 /1!!!!!!!!!!!! e   !!!!!!! TPOZ!!!! DE.SPN! DEV.87T!
902706 /8!!!!!!!!!!!! b     !
902706 /8 /1!!!!!!!!!!!! d   !!!!!!! J     b     !
902707!!!!!!!!!!!! b!!!!!!!!!!!!!! C     .  !MBO!
902708!!!!!!!!!!!! 3!!!!!!!!!!!!!! C     .  !L c b e0N    !
9031!!!!!!!!!!!! cb!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! D     ! J0P! Beb    !
903103!!!!!!!!!!!!          !!!!!!!!!!!!! C     .  !ST.343D!
//^
```

Listing devices with ioscan on HP-UX

ioscan displays information about hardware installed on HP-UX systems. The above example displays the typical output of this command which shows information about the system's hardware profile.

Common usage examples:

ioscan	Display a simple hardware listing
ioscan -f	Display a detailed hardware listing

lsdev

Purpose: List hardware on AIX systems.

Usage syntax: `lsdev -l \PQUJPOT^`

```
# lsdev
M3dbd 1!!!B b bc !!!!!!! M3! Dbd !
de1!!!!!!B b bc ! 2H. 2:. 11!!!! JEF! EWE, SPN! E !
1!!!!!!B b bc ! 2M. 19!!!!!! T b eb e! F ! O ! J bd !
2!!!!!!E e! ! 2 . 19!!!!!! T b eb e! F ! O ! J bd !
1!!!!!!B b bc ! 2M. 19!!!!!! 210211! Nc ! F ! QDJ! Beb ! JJ! !
2!!!!!!B b bc ! 2 . 19!!!!!! 21021102111! Cb . UY! QDJ, Y! Beb !!
1!!!!!!E e! ! 2M. 19!!!!!! JFFF! 913 /4! F ! O ! J bd !
2!!!!!!E e! ! 2 . 19!!!!!! JFFF! 913 /4! F ! O ! J bd !
e1!!!!!!B b bc ! 12. E2. 11. 11! E ! E !
eb1!!!!!!B b bc ! 12. E2!!!!!! T b eb e! J0P! E ! Beb !
e2!!!!!!E e! !!!!!!! M db ! !
e3!!!!!!E e! !!!!!!! M db ! !
e4!!!!!!E e! !!!!!!! M db ! !
e5!!!!!!E e! !!!!!!! M db ! !
e6!!!!!!E e! !!!!!!! M db ! !
e7!!!!!!E e! !!!!!!! M db ! !
e9!!!!!!E e! !!!!!!! M db ! !
e21 !!!!!E e! !!!!!!! M db ! !
e22be !!E e! !!!!!!! M db ! !
e: b !!!!!E e! !!!!!!! M db ! !
e 1!!!!B b bc ! 2T. 19. 11. 6-1! 27! C ! MWE! TDTJ! E ! E !
e 2!!!!E e! ! 2T. 19. 11. 9-1! P ! TDTJ! E ! E !
e 3!!!!B b bc ! 2T. 19. 11. 9-1! 27! C ! MWE! TDTJ! E ! E !
e 1!!!!B b bc ! 2H. 2:!!!!!! BUB0JEF! D ! E d !
//^
```

Listing devices on AIX with lsdev

lsdev displays information about hardware installed on AIX systems. The above example displays the typical output of this command which includes information about hardware installed on the local system.

Common usage examples:

lsdev | Display a simple hardware listing

lspci

Purpose: List PCI devices on Linux systems.

Usage syntax: `lspci [-v] [-d] [-s] [-m] [-c] [-i] [-l] [-p] [-t] [-u] [-v] [-d] [-s] [-m] [-c] [-i] [-l] [-p] [-t] [-u]`

```
# lspci
11:11/1I I !c e ;! J !D b !93:56H0H[ 0Q0QM N !D !
I c! ) !13*!
11:12/1! QDJ! c e ;! J !D b !93:56H0H[ 0Q0QM QDJ! F !S !
Q ! ) !13*!
11:13/1! WHB! d b c !d ;! J !D b !93:56H0H[!
J b e! H b d !D ! ) !13*!
11:13/2! E b !d ;! J !D b !93:56H0H[! J b e!
H b d !D ! ) !13*!
11:2d/1! QDJ! c e ;! J !D b !93912H! )JDI8! Gb *! QDJ! F !
Q !2! ) !12*!
11:2d/2! QDJ! c e ;! J !D b !93912H! )JDI8! Gb *! QDJ! F !
Q !3! ) !12*!
//^
```

Displaying a PCI device listing using the lspci command

lspci lists PCI devices on Linux systems. In the above example, a basic PCI device list is displayed. A more detailed listing can be produced by using the **-v** option as demonstrated in the next example.

```
# lspci -v
11:11/1I I !c e ;! J !D b !93:56H0H[ 0Q0QM N !D !
I c! ) !13*!
!!!!!!!T c ;! E !E d !12be!
!!!!!!!G b ;!c ! b -! b !e -! b d !1!
!!!!!!!Db bc ;! \ 1^! W e !T d d! J b !=@?!
!!!!!!!L !e ! ! ;!b b . !
!!!!!!!L ! e ;! .b !
!
11:12/1! QDJ! c e ;! J !D b !93:56H0H[ 0Q0QM QDJ! F !S !
Q ! ) !13*!
!!!!!!!G b ;!c ! b -! b !e -! b d !1!
!!!!!!!C ;! b >11-! d eb >12-! c e b >12-! d. b d >1!
!!!!!!!N !c e!c e ;! :11111. : !
!!!!!!!Db bc ;! \99^! T c ;! J !D b !E d !1111!
!!!!!!!Db bc ;! \91^! Q !Nb b ! !3!
//^
```

Displaying a verbose PCI device listing

Common usage examples:

- lspci** | Display a simple PCI device list
- lspci -v** | Display a detailed PCI device list

pciconf

Purpose: List PCI devices on BSD systems.

Usage syntax: `! d d ! \PQUJPOT^`

```
# pciconf -lv | less
c1A d 1;1;1;1;!!!!!! d b >1 171111! db e>1 11111111! d >1 23489197!
>1 13! e >1 11!
!!!! e !!!!!>!(J !D b (!
!!!!e d!!!!!!>!(9355102GY! 551GY! )Ob b*! T !D (!
!!!!d b !!!!!>!c e !
!!!! cd b !!!>!IPTU.QDJ!
bc1A d 1;1;2;1;!!!!!! d b >1 171211! db e>1 11111111! d >1 81119197!
>1 11! e >1 11!
!!!! e !!!!!>!(J !D b (!
!!!!e d!!!!!!>!(QJJY4! QDJ. .JTB! C e ! )U ! JJ*! )93482TC*(!
!!!!d b !!!!!>!c e !
!!!! cd b !!!>!QDJ.JTB!
b b d 1A d 1;1;2;2;!!!!!! d b >1 12129b! db e>1 11111111! d >1 82229197!
>1 12! e >1 11!
!!!! e !!!!!>!(J !D b (!
!!!!e d!!!!!!>!(QJJY505F05N! JEF! D ! )93482BC0FC0NC*(!
!!!!d b !!!!!>! b ! b !
!!!! cd b !!!>!BUB!
b d 1A d 1;1;3;1;!!!!!! d b >1 141111! db e>1 11111111! d >1 c 91 !
//^!
```

Output of the pciconf command

The **pciconf** command displays PCI devices on BSD systems. The above example demonstrates listing PCI devices on a BSD system.

Note

*The **pcidump** or **devinfo** commands may be used on some BSD systems in place of the **pciconf** command.*

Common usage examples:

pciconf -lv | Display a complete list of PCI devices

lsusb

Purpose: List USB devices on Linux systems.

Usage syntax: `c! \PQUJPOT^`

```
# lsusb
C ! 114! E d ! 112;! JE! 2e7c;1112! M ! G eb ! 2/2! ! c!
C ! 115! E d ! 112;! JE! 2e7c;1112! M ! G eb ! 2/2! ! c!
C ! 112! E d ! 115;! JE! 1;41;7655! L ! Eb bU b ! 3/1! T d ! )3HC*!
C ! 112! E d ! 112;! JE! 2e7c;1113! M ! G eb ! 3/1! ! c!
C ! 116! E d ! 112;! JE! 2e7c;1112! M ! G eb ! 2/2! ! c!
C ! 113! E d ! 114;! JE! 1572;5e26! E ! P db ! N !
C ! 113! E d ! 113;! JE! 524d;3216! E ! N e ! M211! L c b e!
C ! 113! E d ! 112;! JE! 2e7c;1112! M ! G eb ! 2/2! ! c!
```

Displaying a USB device listing using lsusb

lsusb lists USB devices on Linux systems. Executing **lsusb** with no options will display a simple listing of all USB devices on the local system, as shown in the above example.

The **-v** option can be used with **lsusb** to display a verbose listing of USB devices as shown in the next example.

```
# lsusb -v | less
!
C ! 114! E d ! 112;! JE! 2e7c;1112! M ! G eb ! 2/2! ! c!
E d ! E d !
!!cM !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 29!
!!cE d U !!!!!!!!!!!!! 2!
!!cdeVTC!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2/21!
!!cE d D b !!!!!!!!!!!!!:! I c!
!!cE d T cD b !!!!!!!!!!!!! 1! V e!
!!cE d Q d !!!!!!!!!!!!! 1! G ! e! ) ! *! c!
!!cNb Qbd T 1!!!!!!!!!!!! 75!
!!eW e !!!!!!!!!!!!! 1 2e7c! M ! G eb !
!!eQ e d !!!!!!!!!!!!! 1 1112! 2/2! ! c!
!!cdeE d !!!!!!!!!!!!! 3/17!
//^
```

Displaying a detailed USB device list

Common usage examples:

- lsusb** | Display USB devices
- lsusb -v** | Display a detailed list of USB devices
- lsusb -t** | Display USB devices in tree mode

dmidecode

Purpose: Display detailed information about devices on the system.

Usage syntax: `! e e d e ! \PQUJPOT^`

```
# dmidecode
TNCJPT 3 /42!      /!
56!      d      ! dd      ! 2765! c      /!
Ubc      ! b ! 1 111F1121 /!
!
Ib e      ! 1 1111-! ENJ!      ! 1-! 31! c      !
CJPT! J      b      !
!!!!!! W      e      ;! Q      ! U d      ! MUE!
!!!!!! W      ;! 7/11!
!!!!!! S      b      ! Eb      ;! 1502803117!
!!!!!! Bee      ;! 1 F8D81!
!!!!!! S      ! T      ;! : 327! c      !
!!!!!! SPN! T      ;! 75! C!
!!!!!! D b bd      d ;!
!!!!!! JTB!      !      e!
!!!!!! QDJ!      !      e!
!!!!!! QD! Db e! )QDNDJB*!      !      e!
!!!!!! QQ!      !      e!
!!!!!! BQN!      !      e!
!!!!!! CJPT!      !      be bc      !
!!!!!! CJPT!      be      !      ! b      e!
!!!!!! FTDE!      !      ! b b      bc      !
!!!!!! VTC!      bd      !      !      e!
!!!!!! T b      ! cb      !      !      e!
!!!!!! CJPT! c      !      d      db      !      !      e!
!
Ib e      ! 1 1112-! ENJ!      ! 2-! 36! c      !
T      ! J      b      !
!!!!!! Nb      bd      ;! WN b      -! J d /!
!!!!!! Q      e d ! Ob      ;! WN b      ! W      b ! Q b      !
!!!!!! W      ;! O      !
//!
```

Displaying a list of devices in tree view

dmidecode displays a detailed list of devices on the system. The above example demonstrates the typical output of this command which includes verbose information about the system's hardware.

Tip

The output of the **dmidecode** command can be quite lengthy. Typing **dmidecode | more** will display the output one page at a time.

Common usage examples:

dmidecode | Display detailed information about devices on the system

hdparm

Purpose: Display/set hard drive parameters on Linux systems.

Usage syntax: `! e b ! \PQUJPOT^! \EFWJDF^`

```
# hdparm /dev/sda
0e 0 eb;!
! JP`      !!!!!>!!1! )e b *
! be      !!!!!>!!1! ) *
! beb be!!!!>! 7255! ) *
!          !!!!!>! 2:5680366074-! d !>! 423692919-! b !>! 1
```

Typical output of the hdparm command

The **hdparm** command displays and edits hard drive settings. The example above displays the specified drive's settings. The fields displayed will vary depending on the type of drive in use.

Note

The **hdparm** command has dozens of options that can be used to modify disk drive settings. The options available depend on the type of drive being used (IDE, SATA, etc.). See **man hdparm** for more information and warnings specific to each option.

The **hdparm** command can also be used as a performance benchmark for disk drives using the **-Tt** option as displayed in the next example.

```
# hdparm -Tt /dev/sda
!
0e 0 eb;!
! U      ! dbd e! be ;!!! 22943! NC! !! 2/:;! d e !>! 6:43/:6! NC0 d!
! U      ! c      e! e ! be ;!! 693! NC! !! 5/41! d e !>! 246/41! NC0 d
```

Using the -Tt option to display disk performance benchmarks

Common usage examples:

- hdparm [DISK]

hdparm -Tt [DISK]
- Display settings for the specified disk

Display performance information for the specified disk

eject

Purpose: Unload removable media.

Usage syntax: `d ! \PQUJPOT^! \EFWJDF^`

```
# eject
```

Using the eject command to remove a CD or DVD

The **eject** command unloads removable media devices. It is primarily used to unmount and eject a CD or DVD. On most systems, simply typing the **eject** command will unmount and eject the tray on the disc drive.

Note

*Some systems may require you to specify which device to eject, such as **eject /dev/cdrom**.*

The **-v** option can be used with the **eject** command to display verbose messages when ejecting removable media as shown in the next example.

```
# eject -v /dev/cdrom
d ;!e  d ! b ! ! (0e 0de  (!
d ;!  b e e! b ! ! (0e 0de  (!
d ;! (0e 0de  (! !b!  ! ! (0e 0 1(!
d ;! (0e 0 1(! !      e! b ! (0 e b0GPUD`T3` EJTD2(!
d ;!      !e  d ! (0e 0 1(!      ! (0 e b0GPUD`T3` EJTD2(!
d ;! (0e 0 1(! ! !b!      b      !e  d !
d ;!      ! !      d ! (0e 0 1(!      ! DE.SPN!      d ! d  b e!
d ;! DE.SPN!      d ! d  b e!      dd e e!
```

Displaying verbose messages with the eject -v command

Common usage examples:

eject	Eject the default removable device
eject [DEVICE]	Eject the specified device
eject -c [SLOT] [DEVICE]	Eject a specific slot on a CD changer device
eject -v	Display verbose messages

Section 10:

File Systems

Overview

This section covers usage of basic file system management commands. It also covers popular partition editors for Unix, Linux, and BSD systems such as **fdisk** and **parted**. These commands can be used to create, modify, and delete file systems.

Warning

The following commands can cause irreparable damage to your system if used incorrectly. Always experiment with new commands in a testing environment.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
fdisk	Display and edit hard disk partitions.
parted	Display and edit partitions on Linux systems.
mkfs	Create file systems.
fsck	Check and repair file systems.
badblocks	Check a disk drive for bad blocks.
tune2fs	Adjust Linux file system parameters.
mount umount	Mount/unmount local and remote file systems.
mkswap	Create swap space storage.
swapon swapoff	Activate/deactivate swap space.
swapinfo	Display swap space information.
sync	Flush file system buffers.

Glossary of terms used in this section:

Blocks	Physical storage units on a disk drive.
File System	A method and format for storing data on a disk drive.
Format	The process of preparing a disk drive for a specific file system.
Mount	Process used to attach storage devices to a local system.
Partition	A division of a disk drive.
Swap	A file or partition that acts as secondary storage for RAM.

fdisk

Purpose: Display and edit hard disk partitions.

Usage syntax: `! e ! \PQUJPOT^! \EFWJDF^`

```
# fdisk -l /dev/sda
E  !0e  0 eb;! 271!/! HC-! 2711529(7:7! c  !
366!  be -! 74!  d  0 bd -! 2:568! d  e  !
V  !>! d  e  !  !27176! +! 623!>! 9336391! c  !
E  ! e  ;! 1 :9111111!
!
!!!E  d!C  !!!!T b  !!!!!!!F e!!!!!C  d  !!!Je!!T
0e  0 eb2!!! +!!!!!! 2!!!!!! 23!!!!!! :7469,!! e !! E  ! V  !
0e  0 eb3!!!!!! 24!!!! 2:568!! 2672:2:73,!!! 6!! F  e e!
0e  0 eb6!!!!!! 24!!!!!! 615!!!! 4:62:69,!! 93!! M  !  b ! 0! T  b  !
0e  0 eb7!!!!!! 616!!!! 2:568!! 26334::52!! 94!! M  !
```

Listing the partitions on a disk using the fdisk command

fdisk is a disk partition editor for Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. In the above example, the **-l** option is used to display the partition information for the specified hard disk.

Executing **fdisk** with no options will open the specified disk for editing, as displayed in the next example.

```
# fdisk /dev/sda
D  b e! )!    !    *;! p!
!
E    ! 0e  0 eb;! 271!/1 HC-! 2711529967: 7! c    !
366!  be -! 74!    d    0 bd -! 2:568! d    e    !
V    !>! d    e    !    ! 27176! +! 623! >! 9336391! c    !
E    ! e                ;! 1 :9111111!
!
!!!E    d! C    !!!!T b  !!!!!!!F e!!!!!!C  d  !!!Je!! T
0e  0 eb2!!! +!!!!!! 2!!!!!! 23!!!!!! :7469,!! e !!! E    ! v    !
0e  0 eb3!!!!!!!!!!!! 24!!!!!! 2:568!! 2672:2:73,!!! 6!! F    e e!
0e  0 eb6!!!!!!!!!!!! 24!!!!!!!! 615!!!! 4:62:69,!! 93!! M
!    b ! 0! T    b    !
0e  0 eb7!!!!!!!!!!!! 616!!!!!! 2:568!! 26334::52!!! 94!! M
```

Using the fdisk utility to modify a partition

In this example, the **fdisk** utility starts an interactive shell that can be used to display and modify a disk's partitions. Within the shell, command keys are used to perform a specific task. The following table describes the basic commands available within the **fdisk** utility.

(Continued...)

Command	Function
m	Display the help menu
p	Display the partition table
n	Create a new partition
a	Make a partition bootable
d	Delete a partition
l	List partition types
q	Quit without saving changes
w	Save changes and exit

Basic fdisk commands

Warning

*Incorrectly using the **fdisk** utility can cause data loss or leave your system unbootable. Always use caution when editing disk partitions and make sure to have a backup of your important data.*

Common usage examples:

fdisk -l	List the partition tables for all devices
fdisk -l [DEVICE]	List the partition tables on the specified device
fdisk [DEVICE]	Open the specified device for editing

parted

Purpose: Display and edit partitions on Linux systems.

Usage syntax: `parted [options] [device]`

```
parted /dev/sda
# parted -l /dev/sda
N e ;! BUB! TBNTVOH! IE191IK0! ) d *!
E ! 0e 0 eb;! 91/1HC!
T d ! ! ) db 0 db *;! 623C0623C!
Qb ! Ubc ;! e !
!
O c !!T b !!!F e!!!!T !!!!U !!!!!G ! !!!!!G b !
! 2!!!!!! 215: C!! 217NC!! 216NC!! b !!! !!!!!!!c !
! 3!!!!!! 217NC!! 58/3HC!! 58/2HC!! b !!! !
! 4!!!!!! 58/3HC!! 91/1HC!! 43/9HC!! e e!
! 6!!!!!! 58/3HC!! 89/7HC!! 42/5HC!! db !!! 5!
! 7!!!!!! 89/7HC!! 91/1HC!! 24/9NC!! db !!! . b ) 2*
```

Displaying the partition layout of a disk using the parted utility

parted is a disk partition manager for Linux systems. It is similar to the **fdisk** utility (which is also available for Linux), except it offers a more user friendly interface. In the above example, the `-l` option is used to display the partition information for the specified hard disk.

Executing **parted** with no options will open the specified disk for editing, as displayed in the next example.

```
parted /dev/sda
# parted /dev/sda
HOV! Qb e! 2/9/9/2/26:.2 1 !
V ! 0e 0 eb!
X d ! !HOV! Qb e"! U ! ( (! ! !b! ! !d b e /!
) b e*! !
N e ;! BUB! TBNTVOH! IE191IK0! ) d *!
E ! 0e 0 eb;! 91/1HC!
T d ! ! ) db 0 db *;! 623C0623C!
Qb ! Ubc ;! e !
!
O c !!T b !!!F e!!!!T !!!!U !!!!!G ! !!!!!G b !
! 2!!!!!! 215: C!! 217NC!! 216NC!! b !!! !!!!!!!c !
! 3!!!!!! 217NC!! 58/3HC!! 58/2HC!! b !!! !
! 4!!!!!! 58/3HC!! 91/1HC!! 43/9HC!! e e!
! 6!!!!!! 58/3HC!! 89/7HC!! 42/5HC!! db !!! 5!
! 7!!!!!! 89/7HC!! 91/1HC!! 24/9NC!! db !!! . b ) 2*
```

Editing a disk's partition using the parted utility

(Continued...)

The following table provides an overview of basic **parted** partition editing commands.

Command	Function
print	Display the partition table
help	Display the help menu
mkpart	Create a new partition
rm	Delete a partition
quit	Exit the program

Basic parted commands

Common usage examples:

parted -l	List the partition tables for all devices
parted -l [DEVICE]	List the partition tables on the specified device
parted [DEVICE]	Open the specified device for editing

mkfs

Purpose: Create file systems.

Usage syntax: ! \PQUJPOT^! \EFWJDF^

```
# mkfs -t ext4 /dev/sdb1
3 ! 2/52:/! )33.B .311: *!
G ! bc >!
PT! ;! M !
C d! >51:7! ) >3*!
G b ! >51:7! ) >3*!
233511! e -! 59:242! c d !
35567! c d ! )6/11&*! e! ! ! ! !
G ! eb b! c d >1!
Nb ! ! ! c d >614427591!
26! c d ! !
43879! c d ! ! -! 43879! b ! ! !
9271! e ! ! !
T c d ! c b d ! e! ! c d ;!
!!!!!!!! 43879-! :9415-! 274951-! 33:487-! 3:5:23!
!
X ! e! bc ;! e !
D b ! b ! )92:3! c d *;! e !
X ! c d ! b e! ! ! b d d ! b ;! e !
!
U ! ! ! ! c ! b b d b ! d d e! ! 32! ! !
291! eb -! d ! d ! /! ! V ! 3 ! .d! ! . ! ! e /!
```

Creating an ext4 formatted file system using the mkfs command

The **mkfs** command creates (AKA formats) a file system on a disk drive. In the above example, the **mkfs** command is used on a Linux system to format the first partition of the `/dev/sda` disk drive.

Warning *The `mkfs` command will destroy all data on the target device.*

Note

*Usage syntax and supported options for **mkfs** vary across the different Unix, Linux, and BSD platforms. The above example was created on a Linux system. See **man mkfs** to find the correct usage syntax for your system.*

Common usage examples:

mkfs -t [FSTYPE] [DEVICE]	Create a file system on the specified drive
mkfs -ct [FSTYPE] [DEVICE]	Check for bad blocks before formatting

fsck

Purpose: Check and repair file systems.

Usage syntax: `d ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMFTZ TUFN^`

```
# fsck -n /
d ! 2/51/9! )24.Nb .3119*!
3 d ! 2/51/9! )24.Nb .3119*!
0e 0 eb2! d b !b! ! ! ! !d d! d e!
Qb ! 2;! D d ! e !c d !b e! !
Qb ! 3;! D d !e d ! d !
Qb ! 4;! D d !e d !d d !
Qb ! 5;! D d ! d!d !
Qb ! 6;! D d ! ! b ! b !
//!
```

Using the fsck command to check a file system

fsck checks the specified file systems for errors and repairs them if necessary. In the above example, the **/** file system is checked for errors. The **-n** option is used to instruct **fsck** to check but not repair the specified file system. This is necessary since, in this case, the **/** file system is a live (mounted) file system and cannot be repaired unless first unmounted.

Warning

The **fsck** command should never be used to repair a mounted file system as it will cause data corruption. In Linux, you can safely run **fsck** at the next reboot by typing **sudo touch /forcefsck** on the command line. Other systems may require booting recovery media in order to use **fsck**. See **man fsck** for more information about usage on your system.

Common usage examples:

fsck [FILESYSTEM]

Check and repair the specified file system

fsck -n [FILESYSTEM]

Check the specified file system without repairing it

badblocks

Purpose: Check a disk drive for bad blocks.

Usage syntax: ! cbec d ! \PQUJPOT^! \EFWJDF^

```
# badblocks -v /dev/sda
```

D d ! c d ! ! ! 9499718!
D d ! ! cbe! c d !) be. ! *;! e !
Qb ! d e-! ! cbe! c d ! e/!

Checking a device for bad blocks using the badblocks command

The **badblocks** command is a Linux utility used to search a disk drive for bad blocks. In the above example, the **badblocks** command is used to check 0e 0 eb! for bad blocks. The **-v** option is included to display verbose status information during the scan.

A disk drive that is healthy should have no bad blocks. If bad blocks are found, the drive should be replaced immediately to avoid data loss.

Warning

The default **badblocks** test is read-only and generally safe to use on a live file system. Specifying the **-w** option will perform a read/write test and will destroy all data on the specified disk. It should only be used to test a disk that does not contain critical data, as it will be completely overwritten.

Common usage examples:

badblocks [DEVICE]

Check the specified device for bad blocks

badblocks -v [DEVICE]

Display verbose messages when checking

badblocks -w [DEVICE]

Perform a read/write test on the disk

tune2fs

Purpose: Adjust Linux file system parameters.

Usage syntax: `3 ! \PQUJPOT^! \EFWJDF^`

```
# tune2fs -l /dev/sda5
      3 ! 2/52/!! )33.B .311:*!
G      !      ! b ;!!!= ?!
Mb !      e! ;!!!!!!!!!! 0!
G      ! VVJE;!!!!!!!!!! 79e 2c62.5:3c.59:b.91e9.1734:11e 4cb!
G      ! b d! c ;!!1 FG64!
G      !      ! $;!!!!2! )e b d*!
G      ! b ;!!!!!! b `      b! ` b !      ` e!e ` e !
      ! e ` d      !      ! `c! b `      ! b `      !!
G      ! b ;!!!!!!!!!! e`e d ` b !
E b !      !      ;!!!! )      *!
G      ! b ;!!!!!!!!!! d b !
//^
```

Displaying a file system's parameters using the tune2fs command

The **tune2fs** command displays and edits file system settings on Linux systems. It supports the ext2, ext3, and ext4 file systems. In the above example, the **-l** parameter is used to display detailed information about the specified file system.

tune2fs is most commonly used to adjust the **fsck** intervals for a file system. This is the interval in which the system will automatically run an **fsck** on the file system. The next example displays the variables that control this.

```
# tune2fs -l /dev/sda5 | grep -Ei 'check|max'
Nb      !      ! d ;!!!!!! 43!
Mb ! d d e;!!!!!!!!!!!!!! X e! Nb ! 35! 25;25;31! 3121!
D d!      b ;!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2666311! )7!      *!
O ! d d ! b ;!!!!!!!!!! N ! T ! 31! 25;25;31! 3121!
```

Displaying a file system's fsck parameters

Common usage examples:

tune2fs -l [device]	Display information about the specified file system
tune2fs -c [count] \ [device]	Force the fsck command to check the file system after the specified number of mounts
tune2fs -i [interval] \ [device]	Force the fsck command to check the file system at the specified interval in days, weeks, or months

mount / umount

Purpose: Mount local and remote file systems.

Usage syntax: `mount [-t fstype] [-o options] device dir`

```
# mount /dev/sb1 /mnt/Seagate
```

Mounting a local file system

The **mount** command mounts file systems. In the above example, the device `/dev/sb1` is mounted under the `/mnt/Seagate` directory. This is an example of mounting a local file system.

Tip

Local file systems can be configured to mount automatically at boot using the `/etc/fstab` file.

mount can also be used to mount remote file systems via NFS, as shown in the next example.

```
# mount 10.10.1.48:/home/nick /mnt/nick
```

Mounting an NFS file system

In this example, `/home/nick` on the remote machine (10.10.1.48) is shared via NFS and mounted locally in `/mnt/nick`.

Note

NFS must be properly configured on the remote system for this to work. NFS settings are managed via the `/etc/nfs.conf` file.

The **umount** command unmounts file systems as shown in the next example.

Usage syntax: `umount [-t fstype] dir`

```
# umount /mnt/Seagate
```

Unmounting a file system

Common usage examples:

mount

mount [DEVICE] [DIR]

mount [IP] : [REMOTE] [LOCAL]

umount [PATH]

Display all mounted file systems

Mount the specified device

Mount the specified NFS share

Unmount a file system

swapon / swapoff

Purpose: Activate/deactivate swap space.

Usage syntax: `! b \PQUJPOT^! \EFWJDF^`

```
# swapon /dev/sdb1
```

Activating swap storage

The **swapon** command activates swap storage. The above example demonstrates activating a newly created swap space using **swapon**.

Note

*Newly created swap space does not become usable by the system until it is activated using the **swapon** command. Most systems have at least one swap space that is activated at boot by default. Additional swap devices created after installation must be added to the `/etc/fstab` file to be automatically activated at boot.*

The **swapoff** command deactivates swap storage. The next example demonstrates using **swapoff** to deactivate the `/dev/sdb1` swap device.

Usage syntax: `! b ! \PQUJPOT^! \EFWJDF^`

```
# swapoff /dev/sdb1
```

Deactivating swap storage

Swap storage must be deactivated with the **swapoff** command before it can be changed or removed.

Note

*Solaris systems use the **swap** command in place of **swapon** and **swapoff**.*

Common usage examples:

swapon -a	Enable all swap spaces
swapon [DEVICE]	Enable the specified swap space
swapon -s	Display swap usage by device
swapoff -a	Disable all active swap spaces
swapoff [DEVICE]	Disable the specified swap space

swapinfo

Purpose: Display swap space information.

Usage syntax: `! b ! \PQUJPOT^`

```
# swapinfo
!!!!!!!!!!!!!! Lc!!!!!! Lc!!!!!! Lc! QDU! ! TUBSU0!!!!!! Lc!
UZQF!!!!!! BWBJM!! VTfE! !!! GSFF! VTfE! MJNJU! SFTfSWF! QSJ! OBnf!
e !!!!!!! 635399!!!!!! 1!! 635399!!!!!! 1&!!!!!! 1!!!!!! .!!!!!! 0e 0 110 3!
!!!!!! .! 2227: 7! . 2227: 7!
!!! 49: 927! 254895!! 357143!!! 48&!
```

Output of the swapinfo command on HP-UX

swapinfo displays details about active swap storage. The above example displays the output of the **swapinfo** command on an HP-UX system. It includes information about the size and location of swap storage and the amount of memory and swap utilization.

swapinfo is available on BSD and HP-UX systems. Other platforms use the commands listed in the cross-reference below to display information about swap utilization.

AIX	BSD	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris
lsps	swapinfo	swapinfo	free	swap

Swap command cross reference

Common usage examples:

swapinfo | Display swap space utilization on BSD and HP-UX systems

sync

Purpose: Flush file system buffers.

Usage syntax: `sync`

```
# sync
```

Flushing the file system buffer with the sync command

The **sync** command flushes the file system buffer. Unix, Linux, and BSD systems pool disk activity to increase performance. When this happens, pending write operations are buffered in memory and processed at an opportune time. The **sync** command forces the buffer to flush, which completes all pending write operations.

While the **sync** command is rarely used, it can be helpful in situations where the system must be rebooted in an abnormal manner, such as unplugging the system or pressing the reset button. Executing **sync** before powering off a system in this manner can help prevent file system corruption by ensuring all disk buffers are completely flushed.

Tip

*Executing the **sync** command twice is a common practice to ensure all file system buffers have been flushed. This can be done with one command by executing **sync ; sync** on the command line.*

Common usage examples:

- sync** | Flush the file system buffer
- sync ; sync** | Really flush the file system buffer

Section 11:

Backup and Restore Commands

Overview

This section covers utilities used to backup and restore files. Creating a good backup is very important for recovering from system failure or natural disaster. Most systems have a number of built-in backup programs. These programs can create full, partial, and incremental backups and should be incorporated into your disaster recovery plan.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
<code>tar</code>	Create/extract archive files.
<code>dump</code>	Create incremental backups.
<code>restore</code>	Restore files from dump archives.
<code>dd</code>	Create raw copies of data devices.
<code>cpio</code>	Create/extract cpio archives.
<code>mt</code>	Control tape devices.
<code>mksysb</code>	Create a backup image of an AIX system.

Glossary of terms used in this section:

Full Backup	A backup that includes all files on the local system.
Incremental Backup	A backup that includes only files that have changed since the last full backup.

tar

Purpose: Create/extract archive files.

Usage syntax: `tar b ! \PQUJPOT^! \PVUQVU^! \JOQVU^`

```
# tar -cvf backup.tar /etc/*
0 d0bd 0!
0 d0bd 0 c / !
0 d0bd 0 e c / !
0 d0bd 0 c . / !
0 d0bd 0 c b / !
0 d0bd 0 /e0!
0 d0bd 0 /e026. e . / !
0 d0bd 0 /e073. / !
0 d0bd 0 /e021. be. b ec . e/ !
//!
```

Creating a backup archive of the /etc directory using the tar command

The **tar** command creates and extracts tar archives. It is the most commonly used utility for creating backups on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. In the above example, the **-cvf** option is used to create a backup archive of the directory called `cbd / b .`

In the next example, the **-xvf** option is used to extract the file from the archive created in the first example.

```
# tar -xvf backup.tar etc/hosts
d0 !
```

Extracting files from a tar archive

Note

*The default operation of the **tar** command strips the leading `0!` from the file path. This means that files restored from **tar** archives will be placed in a location relative to the current directory. The **-P** option can be specified to override this behavior.*

Common usage examples:

tar -cvf [FILE] [ITEM]	Backup the specified item(s)
tar -czvf [FILE] [ITEM]	Compress the archive to save space
tar -xvf [FILE] [ITEM]	Restore the specified item(s)
tar -tf [FILE]	List all files in the specified archive

restore

Purpose: Restore files from dump archives.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
# restore -if backup.dump
! ?! pwd!
0!
! ?! cd etc!
! ?! add hosts
! ?! extract
...!
```

Restoring files from a dump archive

The **restore** command restores files from archives created with the **dump** command. The above example demonstrates starting the interactive **restore** shell to extract files from a **dump** archive.

The following table describes the basic **restore** shell commands.

Command	Function
ls [PATH]	List the contents of the current or specified directory
cd [PATH]	Navigate the dump archive
pwd	Display the current working directory
add [PATH]	Add the current directory (or specified item) to the restore list
delete [PATH]	Delete the current directory (or specified item) from the restore list
extract	Extract all files on the restore list
help	Display the help menu
quit	Exit the restore shell

Restore shell commands

Common usage examples:

restore -if [FILE]	Open the specified archive in the restore shell
restore -rf [FILE]	Restore an entire file system from a dump archive
restore -tf [FILE]	List all items in the specified dump archive

dd

Purpose: Create raw copies of data devices.

Usage syntax: `dd if=/dev/sdb of=/dev/sdc`

```
# dd if=/dev/sdb of=/dev/sdc
```

Creating a copy of a disk using the dd command

The **dd** command performs raw (bit for bit) copies of data devices. The **if** parameter specifies the input file or device to be read. The **of** parameter specifies the output location. In the above example, the entire hard drive `/dev/sdb` is copied to `/dev/sdc`.

dd can also be used to create image files of a disk. The next example demonstrates using **dd** to create an ISO image file from a CD-ROM.

```
# dd if=/dev/cdrom of=/tmp/image.iso
```

Converting a CD-ROM into an ISO file using the dd command

Warning

The **dd** command is often referred to as the "data destroyer" because it can be very destructive if used incorrectly. Always use caution when experimenting with **dd**.

Common usage examples:

dd if=[SOURCE] of=[TARGET] | Create a raw copy of the specified device

crio

Purpose: Create or extract cpio archives.

Usage syntax: \JOQVU^! ! d ! \PQUJPOT^! ?! \PVUQVU^

```
# cd /etc
# ls | cpio -ov > /tmp/backup.cpio
be     /d     !
be     !
b b    !
b     b     !
//!
```

Creating a backup with the cpio command

The **cpio** utility creates simple backups. In the above example, the **-ov** option creates a **cpio** backup of the `/0 d!` directory.

The next example demonstrates restoring files from the `cbd /d ! archive` using the `-idv` option.

```
# cd /etc
# cpio -idv < /tmp/backup.cpio
bee    /d    !
be     !
b b    !
b      b    !
//!
```

Extracting files from a cpio archive

Note

cpio is a legacy program that is rarely used for backup on modern systems. Use **tar** and **dump** in place of **cpio** as they offer a more complete and user-friendly backup solution.

Common usage examples:

```
ls | cpio -ov > backup.cpio
cpio -idv < backup.cpio
cpio --list < backup.cpio
```

- Backup the specified item(s)
- Restore the specified item(s)
- List all items in the specified archive

mt

Purpose: Control tape devices.

Usage syntax: `mt [-f /dev/rmt0] {rewind|retension|erase|status|offline}`

```
# mt -f /dev/rmt0 rewind
```

Rewinding a tape using the mt command

The `mt` command controls removable tape devices. It can be used to display the status of the drive and manage its removable media. The example above demonstrates using the `mt` command to rewind the tape in the `/dev/rmt0` drive.

The following table lists the most common operations used with the `mt` utility.

Operation	Function
<code>rewind</code>	Rewind the tape device
<code>retension</code>	Retension the tape
<code>erase</code>	Erase the tape
<code>status</code>	Display the tape device status
<code>offline</code>	Rewind and eject the tape

Common mt operations

Common usage examples:

`mt -f [DEVICE] [OPERATION]`

Execute the specified operation on a tape drive

mksysb

Purpose: Create a backup image of an AIX system.

Usage syntax: `c! \PQUJPOT^! \EFWJDF0GJMF^`

```
# mksysb -i /dev/rmt0
!  
D b ! b ! ! )0 b /eb b*! ! /!  
!  
D b ! ! ! ! ! cbd ! /!  
!  
Cbd ! ! 75:92! ////////////////////////////////////!  
62878! ! 75:92! ! )8:&* /!  
!  
75:92! ! 75:92! ! )211&*!  
1623.149! c;! Cbd ! D e! T dd /!
```

Creating a mksysb backup on AIX

The **mksysb** command creates a backup image of an AIX system. This image can be used to restore the base operating system in the event of system failure.

In the above example a **mksysb** system image is written to the `0e 0 1!` tape device.

Note

mksysb is not a substitute for a traditional backup as it does not include files outside of the base operating system. Databases, 3rd party software, etc. are not backed up in a **mksysb** image. These files should be backed up separately using another method (such as the **tar** command.)

Common usage examples:

mksysb -i [DEVICE/FILE] | Create a system image backup

Section 12:

Monitoring and Troubleshooting

Overview

This section covers commands used to monitor and troubleshoot Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. These commands can be used to diagnose problems or resolve performance problems.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
top	Monitor system performance and running processes.
htop	Advanced system monitor for Linux.
topas	Performance monitor for AIX systems.
iotop	Monitor disk input and output operations.
mpstat	Display processor utilization information.
vmstat	Display virtual memory usage information.
iostat	Display I/O utilization statistics.
dstat	Monitor CPU, disk, network, and swap utilization.
nfsstat	Display NFS statistics.
free	Display system memory and swap space usage information.
df	Display file system usage information.
du	Display disk usage.
uname	Display information about the operating system.
uptime	Display how long the system has been online.
dmesg	Display kernel log messages.
errpt	Display system error messages on AIX systems.
strace	Trace system calls and signals.
ltrace	Trace library calls.
lsmod	Display Linux kernel module information.
insmod rmmod	Install/remove kernel modules.
modinfo	Display information about Linux kernel modules.

(Continued...)

Command	Purpose
<code>sysctl</code>	Display and edit kernel parameters on Linux and BSD systems.

Glossary of terms used in this section:

I/O	(Input/Output) The process of reading or writing to a disk drive.
Kernel Module	An extension to the kernel that provides a driver, feature, or service.
Library	A collection of subroutines used by applications.
Load Average	The average of system load over a period of time.
System Call	The process of a program requesting access to system resources such as kernel facilities or system hardware.
Trace	The process of monitoring internal functions of a program such as system calls and library calls.
Virtual Memory	A logical combination of physical memory and swap storage.

top

Purpose: Monitor system performance and running processes.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^`

```
$ top
!..! 29;67;66! ! 32! -! ! 3! -! ! be! b b ;! 1/33-! 1/46-! 1/42!
Ub ;! 251! b -! ! ! 3! -! 249! -! ! ! e-! ! ! ! c !
D ) *;! : /1& -! 3/1& -! 1/2& -! 96/2& e-! 4/6& b-! 1/2& -! 1/3& -! 1/1& !
N ;!!! 4:99627 ! b -! ! 219:2:7 ! e-! ! 39::431 ! -! ! 46943 ! c !
T b ;!! 4:62:59 ! b -! ! ! 1 ! e-! ! 4:62:59 ! -! ! 775795 ! dbd e!
!
!! PID USER PR NI VIRT RES SHR S %CPU %MEM TIME+ COMMAND !!!
! 63: 8! d !!!!! 31! ! ! 1! 2: 223! 2335! ! 9: 3! S! ! ! 5! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;11/13! !!!!!!!
!!!! 2! !!!!! 31! ! ! 1! 5211! ! : 31! ! 743! T! ! ! 1! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;12/27! !!!!!!!
!!!! 3! !!!!! 26! ! . 6! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! T! ! ! 1! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;11/11! bee! !!!
!!!! 4! !!!!! SU! ! . 6! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! T! ! ! 1! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;11/11! b 01!
!!!! 5! !!!!! 26! ! . 6! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! T! ! ! 1! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;11/93! e01!
!!!! 6! !!!!! SU! ! . 6! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! T! ! ! 1! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;11/11! b d e 01!
!!!! 7! !!!!! SU! ! . 6! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! T! ! ! 1! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;11/11! b 02!
!!!! 8! !!!!! 26! ! . 6! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! T! ! ! 1! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;11/17! e02!
!!!! 9! !!!!! SU! ! . 6! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! T! ! ! 1! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;11/11! b d e 02!
!!!! :! !!!!! 26! ! . 6! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! T! ! ! 1! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;11/12! 01! !!!
!!! 21! !!!!! 26! ! . 6! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! T! ! ! 1! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;11/15! 02! !!!
!!! 22! !!!!! 26! ! . 6! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! T! ! ! 1! ! 1/1! ! ! 1;11/11! !!!!!
```

Monitoring system activity with the top command

top is a process and performance monitor for Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. The first few lines of **top** output displays information about processor, memory, and swap utilization. The remaining portion of the screen is used to display information about running processes. The process listing updates every few seconds to display the most resource-intensive processes.

Tip

There are several interactive commands that can be used to control the output of the **top** command. Press the **?** key within **top** for a complete listing of these commands.

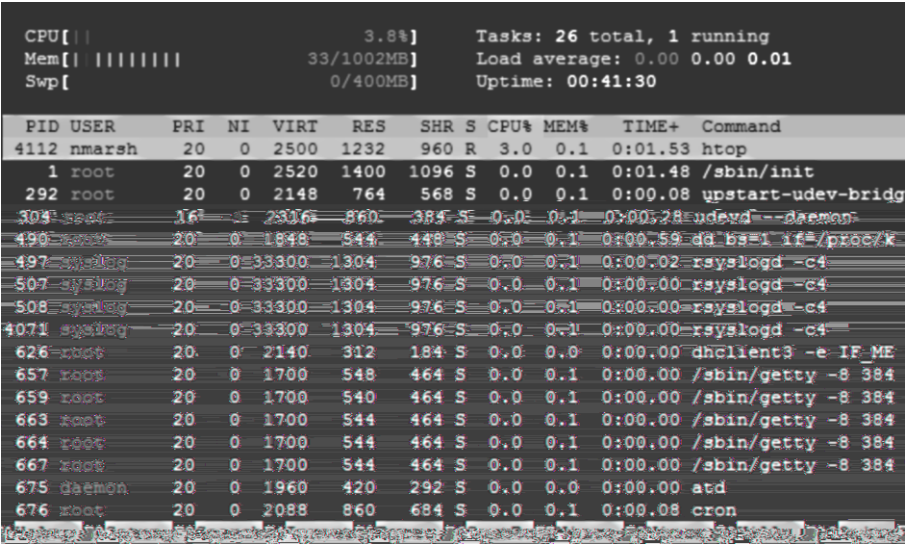
Common usage examples:

top	Monitor system performance and processes
top -u [USER]	Only display processes owned by the specified user
top -d [SECONDS]	Update at the specified interval (in seconds)
top -i	Do not display idle processes

htop

Purpose: Advanced system monitor for Linux.

Usage syntax: `htop` **!**



Monitoring system activity with htop

htop is an alternative system monitor for Linux that is similar to the previously discussed **top** command. The example above displays a screenshot of the **htop** interface. It features color output and uses a graphical scale to visualize processor, memory, and swap utilization.

Tip

Similar to **top**, **htop** supports interactive commands. Press the **F1** key within **htop** for a complete listing of interactive options.

Common usage examples:

- htop**
- htop -u [USER]**
- Run the top monitor with default settings
- Only display processes from the specified user

topas	Display the topas monitor
topas -D	Monitor disk activity
topas -P	Monitor processes
topas -V	Monitor volume group activity
topas -F	Monitor file system activity
topas -E	Monitor ethernet activity

iotop

Purpose: Monitor disk input and output operations.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^`

```
$ iotop
U  b ! EJTL! SFBE;! 63/79! N0 ! ! U  b ! EJTL! XSJUF;! 1/11! C0 !
!! UJE! QSJP! ! VTFS! ! EJTL! SFBE! ! EJTL! XSJUF! ! TXBQJO! !!!! JP?!!!! DPNNBOE!
! 5421! c 05!      !!!!! : /44! N0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! e b ! .U !
! 5422! c 05!      !!!!! 5/95! N0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! e b ! .U !
! 5423! c 05!      !!!!! : /57! N0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! e b ! .U !
! 5424! c 05!      !!!!! 24/79! N0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! e b !
!!!! 2! c 05!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &!      !
!!!! 3! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \      bee^!
!!!! 4! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \      b      01^!
!!!! 5! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \      e01^!
!!!! 6! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \ b d e      01^!
!!!! 7! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \      01^!
!!!! 8! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \d      ^!
!!!! 9! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \      ^!
!!!! :! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \      ^!
!!! 21! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \b      d0      ^!
!!! 22! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \      e01^!
!!! 23! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \ c      d e01^!
!!! 24! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \ bd      e^!
!!! 25! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \ bd      ^!
!!! 26! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \ bd      ^!
!!! 27! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \b b01^!
!!! 28! c 04!      !!!!! 1/11! C0 !!!!! 1/11! C0 !! 1/11! &! 1/11! &! \b b`b      ^!
```

Monitoring disk utilization using iotop

iotop is a utility for monitoring disk I/O operations on Linux systems. It can be useful for monitoring disk performance and tracking down resource intensive applications. The example above displays the default **iotop** interface.

Tip

Press the **Q** key to exit the **iotop** utility.

Common usage examples:

<code>iotop</code>	Monitor system I/O statistics
<code>iotop -o</code>	Only display processes performing I/O
<code>iotop -u [USER]</code>	Only display I/O activity from the specified user
<code>iotop -d [SECONDS]</code>	Update at the specified interval (in seconds)

mpstat

Purpose: Display processor utilization information.

Usage syntax:! `b ! \PQUJPOT^! \EFMBZ ^! \DPVOU^`

```
$ mpstat 2 10
M      ! 3/7/35.2:.      ! )    b  .13*!!!!!!1601403121!
!
21;57;64! BN! ! DQV! ! &      !! & d!!!! &      !&      b !! &      !!! &      !&      b! & e !!      0 !
21;57;66! BN! ! b      !!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 3/33!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! :8/89!!! 93/61!
21;57;68! BN! ! b      !!! 1/73!!! 1/11!!! 3/5:!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! :7/9:!!! 237/61!
21;57;6:! BN! ! b      !!! 1/23!!! 1/11!!! 3/32!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/23!!! 1/11!!! :8/65!!! 95/11!
21;58;12! BN! ! b      !!! 1/36!!! 1/11!!! 6/3:!!! 1/73!!! 1/23!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! :4/84! 514/11!
21;58;14! BN! ! b      !!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 3/66!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! :8/56! 217/61!
21;58;16! BN! ! b      !!! 1/36!!! 1/11!!! 3/95!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! :7/:2! 212/61!
21;58;18! BN! ! b      !!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 4/39!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! :7/83! 229/11!
21;58;1:! BN! ! b      !!! 1/35!!! 1/11!!! 4/51!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! :7/47! 237/11!
21;58;22! BN! ! b      !!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 4/:2!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! :7/1:!!! :8/61!
21;58;24! BN! ! b      !!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! 4/38!!! 1/11!!! 1/23!!! 1/11!!! 1/11!!! :7/72! 218/11!
B      b      ;!!!!!! b      !!! 1/26!!! 1/11!!! 4/26!!! 1/17!!! 1/13!!! 1/12!!! 1/11!!! :7/72! 246/36!
```

Output of the mpstat command

mpstat displays processor utilization information on Linux systems. In the above example, executing **mpstat 2 10** instructs the program to display results in two second intervals and exit after displaying 10 lines. If the delay and count options are omitted **mpstat** will display one line of results and then terminate.

Common usage examples:

mpstat	Display processor utilization once and exit
mpstat [DELAY]	Update display at the specified interval
mpstat [DELAY] [COUNT]	End monitoring after reaching the specified count

vmstat

Purpose: Display virtual memory usage information.

Usage syntax: `b ! \PQUJPOT^! \EFMBZ ^! \DPVOU^`

```
# vmstat 2 10
d !..... b !..... !..... d !.....
! !c!! e!! !!c !!dbd !!! !!! !!!!!c !!!!!c !!! !!!d! ! ! e! b!
! 1! 1!!!! 99! 8:37! 25:295! 8511815! !!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1!!!! :4!!!! 2!!!! 5! 1! 3! :8! 1!
! 1! 2!!!! 99! 89: :7! 25:295! 8511815! !!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 3! 22: 3: 44! 1! 5! :1! 7!
! 3! 1!!!! 99! 89: :7! 25:295! 8511815! !!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 23! 226! 4194! 1! 4! :5! 4!
! 1! 1!!!! 99! 89983! 25:295! 8511815! !!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1! 2939! 36: 4386! 1! 4! :8! 1!
! 1! 1!!!! 99! 89983! 25:295! 8511815! !!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 73! 256! 4142! 1! 5! :7! 1!
! 1! 1!!!! 99! 89859! 25:295! 8511815! !!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1! 225! 3: 76! 1! 3! :9! 1!
! 1! 1!!!! 99! 89563! 25:295! 8511815! !!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 5: 9! 261! 4281! 1! 4! :8! 1!
! 1! 1!!!! 99! 89115! 25:295! 8511815! !!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1! 225! 4184! 1! 4! :8! 1!
! 1! 1!!!! 99! 88743! 25:295! 8511815! !!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 2: 9! 417! 576: 1! 6! :6! 1!
! 1! 1!!!! 99! 88371! 25:295! 8511819! !!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 1!!!! 63! 241! 3975! 1! 4! :8! 1
```

Displaying memory utilization using the vmstat command

The **vmstat** command displays virtual memory statistics. In the above example, executing **vmstat 2 10** instructs the program to display results in two second intervals and exit after displaying 10 lines. If the delay and count parameters are omitted, **vmstat** will display one line of results and then terminate.

Tip

*The **-Sm** option can be used with the **vmstat** command on some systems to display the memory totals in megabytes instead of kilobytes.*

Common usage examples:

vmstat	Display memory utilization once and exit
vmstat [DELAY]	Update results at the specified interval
vmstat [DELAY] [COUNT]	End after reaching the specified count
vmstat -s	Display a table of memory statistics
vmstat -Sm	Display utilization in megabytes

iostat

Purpose: Display I/O utilization statistics.

Usage syntax: `b ! \PQUJPOT^! \EFMBZ ^! \DPVOU^`

```
# iostat -d 2 5
M      ! 3/7/35.2:.      ! )   b   .13*!!!!!! 1601403121!
!
E   d ;!!!!!!      !!! C `   be0 !!! C `      0 !!! C `   be!!!! C `      !
eb!!!!!! 67/76!!!!!! 4/55!!!!!! 867/:6!!!! :573375! 3191144599!
!
E   d ;!!!!!!      !!! C `   be0 !!! C `      0 !!! C `   be!!!! C `      !
eb!!!!!! 4/61!!!!!! 1/11!!!!!! 75/11!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 239!
!
E   d ;!!!!!!      !!! C `   be0 !!! C `      0 !!! C `   be!!!! C `      !
eb!!!!!! 7/:8!!!!!! 1/11!!!!!! 6:/81!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 231!
!
E   d ;!!!!!!      !!! C `   be0 !!! C `      0 !!! C `   be!!!! C `      !
eb!!!!!! 1/11!!!!!! 1/11!!!!!! 1/11!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 1!
!
E   d ;!!!!!!      !!! C `   be0 !!! C `      0 !!! C `   be!!!! C `      !
eb!!!!!! 72/61!!!!!! 1/11!!!!!! 635/11!!!!!! 1!!!!!! 2159
```

Displaying I/O utilization using the iostat command

dstat

Purpose: Monitor CPU, disk, network, and swap utilization.

Usage syntax: `! e b ! \PQUJPOT^! \EFMBZ ^! \DPVOU^`

```
$ dstat 2 10
....  b.d .  b  ....!e 0  b.!.  0  b.!.... b  ..!...  ..!
!  ! e! b!  !  ! be!!  ! d!!  e!!  !!!  !!  !!!d !
!!1!!3!!:8!!1!!1!!1 2874C!!48:  !!!1!!!!1!  !!!1!!!!1!  !242!!3722!
!!1!!:!!:2!!1!!1!!1 1 !!!1!!!!1!  !457 !!!:  !!!1!!!!1!  !593!!5859!
!!1!!4!!:8!!1!!1!!1 1 !!!1!!!!521  !252 !!!27  !!!1!!!!1!  !236!!429:!
!!1!!4!!:8!!1!!1!!1 1 !!!1!!!!1!  !!66 !:1:1C  !!!1!!!!1!  !225!!4165!
!!1!!4!!:7!!1!!1!!1 1 !!!1!!!!1!  !!66 !!!:/:  !!!1!!!!1!  !211!!3834!
!!1!!5!!:7!!1!!1!!1 1 !!!1!!!!487  !!74 !!!22  !!!1!!!!1!  !226!!3:15!
!!1!!4!!:7!!1!!1!!1 1 !!!1!!!!1!  !!66 !!!/9  !!!1!!!!1!  !238!!4332!
!!1!!3!!:9!!1!!1!!1 1 !!!1!!!!293  !!75 !!!24  !!!1!!!!1!  !246!!4178!
!!1!!3!!:8!!1!!1!!1 1 !!!1!!!!1!  !!66 !!!21  !!!1!!!!1!  !226!!3:36!
!!1!!5!!:7!!1!!1!!1 1 !!!1!!!!1!  !!65 !:943C  !!!1!!!!1!  !229!!423:!
!!1!!24!!98!!1!!1!!1 1 !!!1!!!!5  !!48 !!!22  !!!1!!!!1!  !659!!5:61!
```

Monitoring system performance using the dstat command

dstat is an all-in-one performance monitoring utility for Linux systems. The above example demonstrates the default output of **dstat** which displays CPU, disk, network, and swap utilization in a single and easy-to-read display.

Tip

*dstat output can be custom-tailored to your needs using a number of command line options. See **man dstat** for more information.*

Common usage examples:

dstat	Monitor system utilization
dstat [DELAY]	Update results at the specified interval
dstat [DELAY] [COUNT]	End monitoring after reaching the specified count

nfsstat

Purpose: Display NFS statistics.

Usage syntax: b ! \PQUJPOT^

```
# nfsstat
T      ! d! b ;!
db      !!!!!cbedb  !!cbeb  !!!!cbed  !!!! e db  !
2!!!!!!!! 1!!!!!!!! 1!!!!!!!! 1!!!!!!!! 1!
!
T      !      ! 4;!
      !!!!!      b      !!!!!      b      !!!!!      !!!!!bdd      !!!!!      be      !
2!!!!!!!! 211& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1&
be!!!!!!!!      !!!!!d b      !!!!!      e      !!!!!      !!!!!      e!
1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1&
      !!!!!      e      !!!!!      b      !!!!!      !!!!!      bee      !!!!!      bee      !
1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1&
      b      !!!!!      !!!!!      b d      !!!!!d      !
1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1&
!
D      ! d! b ;!
db      !!!!!      b      !!!b      !
3:35!!!!!!!! 1!!!!!!!! 1!
!
D      !      ! 4;!
      !!!!!      b      !!!!!      b      !!!!!      !!!!!bdd      !!!!!      be      !
1!!!!!!!! 1& 3872!!!!!!!! :5& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 3!!!!!!!! 1& 98!!!!!!!! 3& 1!!!!!!!! 1&
be!!!!!!!!      !!!!!d b      !!!!!      e      !!!!!      !!!!!      e!
2!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 4!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1&
      !!!!!      e      !!!!!      b      !!!!!      !!!!!      bee      !!!!!      bee      !
1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1& 77!!!!!!!! 3&
      b      !!!!!      !!!!!      b d      !!!!!d      !
1!!!!!!!! 1& 3!!!!!!!! 1& 2!!!!!!!! 1& 1!!!!!!!! 1&
```

Displaying NFS statistics

nfsstat displays NFS utilization statistics. This can be helpful for monitoring performance of NFS services. The above example shows various utilization indicators for the NFS client and server running on the local system

Common usage examples:

nfsstat	Display all NFS statistics
nfsstat -s	Display server statistics only
nfsstat -c	Display client statistics only

free

Purpose: Display system memory and swap space usage information.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^`

```
$ free
!!!!!!!!!! b!!!!!!!! e!!!!!!!! !!!!! b e!!!!c !!!!!dbd e!
N ,!!!! 9297523!!!! 9247863!!!! 5: 771!!!!!!!!!!!! 1!!!! 292: 71!!!! 8463811!
.0,!c 0dbd ,!! 7131: 3!!!! 869543!
T b ,!!!! 347: 6943!!!! 99!! 347: 6855!
```

Displaying memory and swap space utilization using the free command

free displays memory and swap space utilization on Linux systems. The default output of the **free** command displays totals in kilobytes, as displayed in the above example. The next example demonstrates using the **-m** option which produces a more "human friendly" output in megabytes.

```
$ free -m
!!!!!!!!!! b !!!!!!!!! e!!!!!!!! !!!!! b e!!!!c !!!!!dbd e!
N ;!!!!!!!! 8::5!!!!!!!! 8:5!!!!!!!! 59!!!!!!!!!!!! 1!!!!!!!! 288!!!!!!!! 829!
.0,!c 0dbd ;!!!! 699!!!!!!!! 8517!
T b ;!!!!!!!! 34251!!!!!!!! 1!!!!!!!! 34251!
```

Displaying memory and swap space utilization in "human friendly" format

Common usage examples:

free	Display memory usage in kilobytes
free -m	Display memory usage in megabytes
free -g	Display memory usage in gigabytes

df

Purpose: Display file system usage information.

du

Purpose: Display disk usage.

Usage syntax: `du [-e] [-l] [-P] [-q] [-t] [-u] [-x] [-H] [-S] [-s] [-a] [-c] [-d] [-m] [-M] [-H] [-S] [-s] [-a] [-c] [-d] [-m] [-M]`

```
$ du -hs /usr
634N!!!! 0  !
```

Using the du command to display the size of a directory

The **du** command displays information about disk usage. It can display the size of a specific directory or group of files. The above example demonstrates using the **du** command to display the size of the `/usr` directory. The **-hs** option instructs **du** to show summarized results in "human readable" form. Omitting the **-s** option will recursively display the size of each file under `/usr`, as demonstrated below.

```
$ du -h /usr/
5/1L!!!! 0 0 db 0 d!
2/5N!!!! 0 0 db 0c !
5/1L!!!! 0 0 db 0 b !
5/1L!!!! 0 0 db 0 d!
5/1L!!!! 0 0 db 0 c !
335L!!!! 0 0 db 0 b 0 b 0 b 2!
339L!!!! 0 0 db 0 b 0 b !
```

Displaying the size of files using the du command

Some systems may not support the **-h** parameter. In this case, the **du** command will display file sizes in blocks rather than a "human readable" unit of measure, as shown in the next example.

```
$ du -s /usr
645995!!!! 0  !
```

Output of the du command on older Unix systems

Common usage examples:

du -hs	Display the size of the current directory
du -hs [DIRECTORY]	Display the size of the specified directory
du -h [DIRECTORY]	Display the size of each file in the specified directory

uname

Purpose: Display information about the operating system.

Usage syntax: `uname -a`

```
# uname -a
M      !      b      ! 3/7/39. 22.      d! 97` 75! HOV0M      !
```

Output of the `uname` command on Linux systems

uname displays information and the hardware and software versions installed on the system. This includes information such as processor type, kernel version, and hardware platform for the local system.

The above example displays **uname** output on a Linux system. The next example displays the output on an HP-UX system.

```
# uname -a
I Q. VY!      2! C/21/31! D! : 1110972! 43.      !      d      !
```

Output of the `uname` command on HP-UX systems

The output of the **uname** varies across platforms. The table below describes the typical information displayed when executing **uname -a**.

Platform	Hostname	Version		Hardware	Other
M	b	3/7/39. 22.	d	97` 75	HOV0M
I Q. VY	2	C/21/31! D	:	1110972	43. ! d

Common usage examples:

- `uname -a` | Display all information
- `uname -r` | Display the kernel version number

uptime

Purpose: Display how long the system has been online.

Usage syntax:

```
$ uptime
```

```
! 2:;26;66! ! 3! eb ! 51! -! ! 3! -! ! be! b b ;! 1/24-! 2/26-! 2/35
```

Output of the uptime command

The **uptime** command displays how long a system has been online since the last shutdown or restart. It also displays the number of users currently logged into the system and the CPU load average.

The load average information displays three numeric fields. These represent three samples of system load taken over the last 1, 5, and 15 minutes. The lower the number, the lower the system load is. For example, on a single CPU system, a .13 load average correlates to a 13% load. A 1.15 load average would be a 115% load meaning that the system is 15% overloaded because processes have to wait 15% of the time for system resources (such as CPU and disk I/O).

Note

The load average is displayed for informational purposes only. It is not meant to be used as an accurate performance gauge, as it can be affected by various factors.

Common usage examples:

uptime | Display system uptime and load average information

dmesg

Purpose: Display kernel log messages.

Usage syntax: `! e ! \PQUJPOT^!`

```
# dmesg | less
\1/111111^! J      b      ! d      ! c      ! d      !
\1/111111^! J      b      ! d      ! c      ! d      !
\1/111111^! M      !      ! 3/7/35.38.      ! )c      eeA b      *! ) dd!      !
5/3/5! )Vc      ! 5/3/5.2 c      4*! $2! TNQ! G      ! Nb ! 23! 12;56;17! VUD! 3121!
)Vc      ! 3/7/35.38/79.      *!
\1/111111^! CJPT.      e e!      db ! SBN! b ;!
\1/111111^! CJPT. 931;! 1111111111111111! ! 11111111111: 911! ) bc *!
\1/111111^! CJPT. 931;! 11111111111: 911! ! 11111111111b1111! ) e*!
\1/111111^! CJPT. 931;! 11111111111db111! ! 11111111111dd111! ) e*!
\1/111111^! CJPT. 931;! 11111111111ed111! ! 1111111111121111! ) e*!
//^!
```

Displaying kernel messages using dmesg

The **dmesg** command displays the kernel message log. This is the first place you should check when troubleshooting a problem. Executing **dmesg** displays all messages in the kernel log buffer, as demonstrated in the above example.

dmesg output can be very lengthy. Using **grep** with the **dmesg** command is helpful to search for a specific message. The next example demonstrates filtering **dmesg** using **grep** to search for the word *fail*.

```
$ dmesg | grep fail
\4:287/342833^! c.      b ;! c ! ! 3.3;2/1! b e!      !      ! . 6!
\52532/738463^! QN;! E d ! 3. 3! b e!      !      ;!      ! . 2:!
\5253: /263:53^! c.      b ;! c ! ! 3.4;2/1! b e!      !      ! . 6!
\57:49/: :5127^! c.      b ;! c ! ! 3.4;2/1! b e!      !      ! . 6!
\5:97: /9:2428^! c.      b ;! c ! ! 3.4;2/1! b e!      !      ! . 6!
\68214 /147783^! QN;! E d ! 3. 4! b e!      !      ;!      ! . 2:!
//^!
```

Searching dmesg output for an error message

Tip

Kernel messages are typically stored in the! 0 b 0 0e ! file.

Common usage examples:

- dmesg** | Display the kernel log
- dmesg -c** | Clear all kernel log messages

errpt

Purpose: Display system error messages on AIX systems.

Usage syntax: `errpt [-a] [-j IDENTIFIER]`

```
# errpt
JEFOUJGJFS! UJNFTUBNQ! ! U! D! SFTPVSDf` OBNF! ! EFTDSJQUJPO!
B7EG56BB!!! 1626254221! J! P! SNDeb !!!!!U !eb ! ! b e!/
3CGB87G7!!! 1626253: 21! U! T! TZTQSPD!!!!!! TZTUFN! TIVUEPXO! CZ! VTFS!
: ECDGEFF!!! 1626254121! U! P! e !!!!!FSSPS! MPHJJOH! UVSOFE! PO!
78256B4:!!! 1621343521! V! T! TZTEVNQ!!!!!! TZTUFN! EVNQ!
CF1B14F6!!! 1621343521! Q! I! b b 1!!!!FOWJSPONFOUBM QSPCMFN!
G59248BD!!! 1621343521! V! P! e !!!!!DPNQSFtTFE! NJOJNBm EVNQ!
CGF5D136!!! 1621342321! Q! I! b b 1!!!!VOEFUFSNJOFE! FSSPS!
//^
```

Example output of the errpt command

errpt displays the error log on IBM AIX systems. It can be helpful when troubleshooting problems with system hardware and software. Executing the **errpt** command displays a short list of logged errors as shown in the above example. The **-a** option can be used with **errpt** to display detailed information about each error, as shown in the next example.

```
# errpt -a
.....!
MBCFM;!!!!!!!! FQPx` TVT` DISQ
JEFOUJGJFS;!!!! CF1B14F6!
!
Eb 0U ;!!!!!! Tb !Nb ! 26! 25;3: ;65! DEU! 3121!
T d! O c ;! 58!
Nbd !Je;!!!!!! 1119B52E5D11!
O e !Je;!!!!!! db !
D b ;!!!!!!!!!! I!
U ;!!!!!!!!!! QFSN!
XQBS;!!!!!!!!!! H cb !
S d! Ob ;!!! b b 1!
//^
```

Output of the errpt -a command

Tip

To clear the AIX error log, execute **errclear 0** as the root user.

Common usage examples:

errpt	Display a summary of system errors
errpt -a	Display detailed information for all errors
errpt -aj [IDENTIFIER]	Display detailed information for a specific error

strace

Purpose: Trace system calls and signals.

Usage syntax: `bd ! \PQUJPOT^! \QSPHSBN^`

```
$ strace ls
) #0  0 c0 db 0 `VT/ 90MD` OBNF#-! P` SEPOMZ *! >! 4!
b 75)4-! ` e >T` JGSFH 1755-! ` >88-! /// *! >! 1!
b 3)OVMM-! 88-! QSPU` SFBE-! NBQ` QSJWBUF-! 4-! 1*! >! 1 c86 9111!
d )4*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! 1!
) #0  0 c0 db 0 `VT/VUG.90MD` QBQFS#-! P` SEPOMZ *! >! .2! FOPFOU! )O !
d ! ! !e d *!
) #0  0 c0 db 0 `VT/ 90MD` QBQFS#-! P` SEPOMZ *! >! 4!
b 75)4-! ` e >T` JGSFH 1755-! ` >45-! /// *! >! 1!
b 3)OVMM-! 45-! QSPU` SFBE-! NBQ` QSJWBUF-! 4-! 1*! >! 1 c86 8111!
d )4*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! 1!
) #0  0 c0 db 0 `VT/VUG.90MD` NFFTBTBHT#-! P` SEPOMZ *! >! .2! FOPFOU!
)O ! d ! ! !e d *!
) #0  0 c0 db 0 `VT/ 90MD` NFFTBTBHT#-! P` SEPOMZ *! >! 4!
b 75)4-! ` e >T` JGEJS 1866-! ` >51:7-! /// *! >! 1!
d )4*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! 1!
) #0  0 c0 db 0 `VT/ 90MD` NFFTBTBHT0TZT` MD` NFFTBTBHT#-!
P` SEPOMZ *! >! 4!
b 75)4-! ` e >T` JGSFH 1755-! ` >63-! /// *! >! 1!
b 3)OVMM-! 63-! QSPU` SFBE-! NBQ` QSJWBUF-! 4-! 1*! >! 1 c86 7111!
d )4*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! 1!
//
```

Using the strace command to trace system calls

strace is a debugging tool that is used to trace system calls and signals. This information can be used to troubleshoot problems with a command or program. The above example displays the typical output of the **strace** command. This output can be difficult to interpret; however, it is extremely helpful to developers when reporting bugs in a program.

Note *Some systems may use the **truss** command in place of **strace**.*

Common usage examples:

strace [PROGRAM]

Trace the specified program

strace -o [FILE] [PROGRAM]

Save trace output to the specified file

ltrace

Purpose: Trace library calls.

Usage syntax: bd ! \PQUJPOT^! \QSPHSBN^

```
$ !trace ls
`` cd` b ` b )1 915 991-! 2-! 1 c c15:55-! 1 916: 81-! 1 916: 71!
= e! ///?!
db )7-! ##*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! # `VT/VUG.9#!
c e e b )#d #!#0 0 b 0 db #*!>!#0 0 b 0 db #!
e b )#d #*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! #d #!
`` d b` b )1 9162c21-! 1-! 1-! 1 c87e 5-! 1 c c159b9*!>! 1!
b )2*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! 1!
)RVPVUJOH` TUZMF#*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! OVMM!
)MT` CMPDL` TJ[ F#*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! OVMM!
)CMPDL` TJ[ F#*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! OVMM!
)CMPDLTJ[F#*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! OVMM!
)QPTJYMZ` DESSFDU#*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! OVMM!
)CMPDL` TJ[ F#*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! OVMM!
)DPMVNOT#*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! OVMM!
d )2-! 32634-! 1 c c1598d*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! .2!
)UBCTJ[ F#*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! OVMM!
` )2-! 1 c c15:55-! #bcde ; BCDEGHIJ;#///-!
1 916db11-! 1 c c159:1*!>! .2!
`` db )*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! 1 c86847:d!
b d)47*!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!>! 1 9176281!
//!
```

Using ltrace to debug a program

Similar to the previously discussed **strace** command, **ltrace** is a debugging tool for Linux systems that is used to trace library calls. The above example demonstrates the typical output of the **ltrace** command.

Common usage examples:

ltrace [PROGRAM]	Trace the specified program
ltrace -o [FILE] [PROGRAM]	Save trace output to the specified file

lsmod

Purpose: Display Linux kernel module information.

Usage syntax:! e

```
$ lsmod
N e !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! T !! V e! c !
b ` bd !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 34795!! 1!
  e! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 33983!! 24!
b ` d !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 54535!! 2! e!
  !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 7127!! 2! e!
  !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 373267!! 1!
d e! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 7883!! 4! e- !
` bd !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 5719!! 3! e- !
  d! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 29661!! 22! e-b ` d - - d e- ` bd !
bc ` !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 4951!! 1!
` bc !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2593!! 2! bc ` !
` bc !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 27243!! 2! ` bc !
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 23435!! 1!
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2: 187!! 1!
7! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 384299!! 29!
b ` d! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 47755!! 2!
//^
```

Output of the lsmod command

lsmod displays information about installed kernel modules. Kernel modules are an extension of the kernel itself. Each module generally serves a singular purpose, such as adding support for a specific technology or type of hardware. The above example displays the installed kernel modules on a Linux system.

lsmod is a Linux command. Similar commands exist on other platforms and are detailed in the following cross-reference table.

AIX	BSD	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris
gexkex	kldstat	kmadmin	lsmod	modinfo

Kernel module command cross-reference

Common usage examples:

lsmod | List installed kernel modules

insmod / rmmmod

Purpose: Install/remove kernel modules.

Usage syntax: `! e! \NPEVMF^`

```
# insmod /lib/modules/2.6.24-27-server/kernel/drivers/block/floppy.ko
# lsmod | grep floppy
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 6: 443! ! !
```

Loading a module into the kernel

The **insmod** command is used install to kernel modules on Linux systems. The above example demonstrates using **insmod** to install the `! e! \NPEVMF^` module, which adds support to the system for floppy disk drives.

The **rmmmod** command unloads modules from the kernel. The next example demonstrates removing the previously loaded `! e! \NPEVMF^` module using the **rmmmod** command.

Usage syntax: `! e! \NPEVMF^`

```
# rmmmod floppy
```

Removing a kernel module

insmod and **rmmmod** are Linux commands. Similar commands exist on other platforms and are detailed in the following cross-reference table.

	BSD	HP-UX	Linux	Solaris
Install	kldload	kmadmin	insmod	modload
Remove	kldunload	kmadmin	rmmmod	modunload

Kernel module command cross-reference

Common usage examples:

insmod [MODULE]	Load the specified module into the kernel
rmmmod [MODULE]	Unload the specified module

modinfo

Purpose: Display information about Linux kernel modules.

Usage syntax: `modinfo [MODULE]`

```
$ modinfo nfs
filename: /lib/modules/3.10.0-1062.el7.x86_64/kernel/drivers/nfs/nfs.ko
license: GPL
author:
description:
version:
srcversion:
depends:
retpoline:
parm:
name: nfs
alias:
symbol:
vermagic: 3.10.0-1062.el7.x86_64 gcc:4.8.5 kernel:3.10.0-1062.el7.x86_64
```

Using the modinfo command to display information about the NFS module

modinfo displays information about Linux kernel modules. It includes helpful information such as the file location, license, version, and dependencies for the module. The above example demonstrates using **modinfo** to display information about the NFS kernel module.

Note

Linux kernel modules typically are stored in the `/lib/modules/` directory.

Common usage examples:

modinfo [MODULE] | Display information about the specified module

sysctl

Purpose: Display and edit kernel parameters on Linux and BSD systems.

Usage syntax: `d ! \PQUJPOT^`

```
$ sysctl -a
/ d e` b ` b !>! 611111!
/ d e` b ` !>! 5!
/ d e` d e` ` !>! 2!
/ d e` b !>! 352; 2!
/ d e` b ` d !>! 611111!
/ d e` ` b !>! 43!
/ d e` ` e` !>! 2111111!
/ d e` ` ` !>! : 61111!
/ d e` d b ` e!>! 1!
/ b d!>! 1!
/d ` ` e!>! 1!
/d ` b !>! d !
```

Displaying kernel parameters

The **sysctl** command displays and edits tunable kernel parameters. This allows you to fine tune various aspects of the operating system.

Warning

You should not change these values unless you fully understand the impact of the parameter you are setting.

Kernel parameters are typically stored in the `/etc/default/grub` file. Settings changed on the command line via **sysctl** will be lost at reboot unless they are added to the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file.

Note

*HP-UX and Solaris use the **sysdef** command in place of **sysctl**. AIX systems use the **tunchange** command.*

Common usage examples:

```
sysctl -a
```

Display all kernel parameters

```
sysctl -w [SETTING]=[VALUE]
```

Set the specified kernel parameter

Section 13:

Printing Commands

Overview

lp

Purpose: Print files.

Usage syntax: `lp [-d PRINTER] [-n NUM] FILE`

```
$ lp -d HP-4350 /etc/hosts
lp: printing file /etc/hosts to HP-4350
lp: done
```

Printing a file using the lp command

The **lp** command submits files for printing. In the above example, the file `/etc/hosts` is printed on the specified destination printer. The system will display a job summary after executing the command. Included in the job summary is the print job's ID number. On most systems, the ID number consists of the printer name with the job ID for the specified printer appended to it (4 in this case).

Note

If no destination is specified, the file will print on the default system printer.

Common usage examples:

<code>lp [FILE]</code>	Print a file to the default printer
<code>lp -d [PRINTER] [FILE]</code>	Print to the specified printer
<code>lp -n [NUM] -d [PRINTER] [FILE]</code>	Print the specified number of copies

lpstat

Purpose: Display printer and print job status information.

Usage syntax:! b ! \PQUJPOT^

```
$ lpstat
IQ. 5461. 6!!!!!!!! d !!!!!!! 2135!! U ! 13! K ! 311:! 23;67;61! QN! DEU!
IQ. 5461. 7!!!!!!!! d !!!!!!! 2135!! U ! 13! K ! 311:! 23;67;62! QN! DEU!
IQ. 5461. 8!!!!!!!! d !!!!!!! 2135!! U ! 13! K ! 311:! 23;67;63! QN! DEU!
IQ. 5461. 9!!!!!!!! d !!!!!!! 2135!! U ! 13! K ! 311:! 23;67;63! QN! DEU!
```

Using the lpstat command to display queued print requests

The **lpstat** command displays information about printers and queued print jobs. In the above example, executing **lpstat** with no options displays the status of all queued print jobs.

The output of the **lpstat** command is defined in the following table.

Field 1	Field 2	Field 3	Field 4
PrinterName-JobID	Job owner	Job size	Submission time and date

The **-a** option shows the status of all printers on the local system as demonstrated in the next example.

```
$ lpstat -a
IQ. 5461! bdd      !      !      d ! U ! 13! K ! 311:! 23;62;19! QN! DE!
IQ. 6211! bdd      !      !      d ! U ! 13! K ! 311:! 23;62;19! QN! DE!
```

Displaying the status of all print queues on the local system

Common usage examples:

- lpstat** | Display the status of the print queue
- lpstat -a** | Display the current state of all printers
- lpstat -p** | Display the printing status of all printers

lpq

Purpose: Display print queue status.

Usage syntax: `lpq [-P PRINTER]`

```
$ lpq -a
Sb  !!!! P      !!! K c!!!! G  ) *!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! U  b ! T  !
2  !!!!! d  !!!! 3!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
3  e!!!! d  !!!! 4!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
4  e!!!! d  !!!! 5!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
5  !!!!! d  !!!! 6!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
6  !!!!! d  !!!! 7!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
7  !!!!! d  !!!! 8!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
8  !!!!! d  !!!! 9!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
9  !!!!! d  !!!!:!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
:  !!!!! d  !!!! 2!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
```

Displaying the status of queued print jobs using the lpq command

The **lpq** command displays the status of queued print jobs. It is similar to the **lpstat** command except it provides more user-friendly output. Unlike the **lpstat** command, the **lpq** command only supports a limited number of command line options.

In the above example, executing **lpq -a** displays all queued print jobs. The next example demonstrates using the **-P** option to display the status of a specific printer.

```
$ lpq -P HP-4350
IQ. 5461!  !  !  be !
Sb  !!!! P      !!! K c!!!! G  ) *!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! U  b ! T  !
2  !!!!! d  !!!! 3!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
3  e!!!! d  !!!! 4!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
4  e!!!! d  !!!! 5!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
5  !!!!! d  !!!! 6!!!!!!!!!!!! !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c
```

Displaying the status of a specific printer using the lpq command

Common usage examples:

- lpq -a** | Display the status of all queued print jobs
- lpq -P [PRINTER]** | Display the status of the specified printer

cancel

Purpose: Cancel and delete queued print jobs.

Usage syntax: `! db d ! \PQUJPOT^! \KPCJE^`

```
$ lpq -P HP-4350
IQ. 5461!  !  !  be !
Sb  !!!! P      !!! K c!!!! G  ) *!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! U  b! T  !
2  !!!!! d  !!!! 7!!!!!!!          !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
3  e!!!! d  !!!! 8!!!!!!!          !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
4  e!!!! d  !!!! 9!!!!!!!          !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
5  !!!!! d  !!!!:!!!!!!          !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
6  !!!!! d  !!!! 21!!!!!!          !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
$ cancel 10
```

Using the cancel command to cancel an individual print job

The **cancel** command deletes queued print jobs. In the above example, **cancel** is used to remove an individual job by specifying the job's ID number. The next example demonstrates using the **-a** parameter to remove all queued print jobs from the specified printer.

```
$ lpq -P HP-4350
IQ. 5461!  !  !  be !
Sb  !!!! P      !!! K c!!!! G  ) *!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! U  b! T  !
2  !!!!! d  !!!! 7!!!!!!!          !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
3  e!!!! d  !!!! 8!!!!!!!          !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
4  e!!!! d  !!!! 9!!!!!!!          !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c  !
5  !!!!! d  !!!!:!!!!!!          !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! 2135! c
$ cancel -a HP-4350
$ lpq -P HP-4350
IQ. 5461!  !  !  be !
!  !
```

Using the cancel command to cancel all queued print jobs on a printer

Note

Some UNIX systems may use the **lprm** command in place of **cancel**.

Common usage examples:

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| cancel [JOB] | Cancel the specified print job |
| cancel -a | Cancel all print jobs on all printers |
| cancel -a [PRINTER] | Cancel all jobs on the specified printer |

enable / disable

Purpose: Enable/disable printers.

Usage syntax: `enable [printer]`

```
# enable HP-4350
# lpq
IQ.5461! ! be !
```

Enabling a printer using the enable command

The **enable** command enables printers which makes them available for printing. In the above example, the specified printer is enabled and made available for printing after executing the **enable** command.

The **disable** command takes printers offline and disables them from printing, as demonstrated in the next example.

Usage syntax: `disable [printer]`

```
# disable HP-4350
# lpq
IQ.5461! ! ! be !
```

Disabling a printer using the disable command

Most systems will continue to accept print requests when a printer is disabled. The jobs will remain in the queue until the printer is enabled.

Note

*Systems with CUPS (Common Unix Printing System) will use the **cupsenable** and **cupsdisable** commands in place of **enable** and **disable**.*

Common usage examples:

enable [PRINTER]

Enable the specified printer

disable [PRINTER]

Disable the specified printer

disable -c [PRINTER]

Disable a printer and cancel all queued jobs

lpadmin

Purpose: Administer printers.

Usage syntax: `lpadmin -p [NAME] -v [DEVICE] -E -v socket://[IP]`

```
$ lpadmin -p HP-5200 -E -v socket://10.10.1.32
$ lpstat -a
IQ.6311! bdd          !          ! d!G !27! B !3121! 23;52;12! QN! DEU!
```

Adding a printer using the `lpadmin` command

The `lpadmin` command manages printers on Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. In the above example, a network printer with the IP address of 21 /21 /2 /43 is added to the system using the `lpadmin` command.

The next example demonstrates removing the printer created in the previous example using `lpadmin -x`.

```
$ lpadmin -x HP-5200
$ lpstat -a
```

Removing a printer using the `lpadmin` command

Note

Command line options for the `lpadmin` utility vary across the different platforms. See `man lpadmin` for information specific to your system.

Common usage examples:

`lpadmin -p [NAME] -v [DEVICE]`

Add a printer to the system

`lpadmin -x [PRINTER]`

Remove a printer from the system

Section 14:

Software Installation

Overview

Software installation is the one area that varies greatly across the different Unix, Linux, and BSD systems. Each distribution has its own unique set of software management utilities. This section provides an overview of these software management commands for each platform.

Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
dpkg	Install /remove Debian Linux software packages.
aptitude	Automated package manager for Debian Linux-based systems.
rpm	Install /remove Red Hat Linux packages.
yum	Automated package manager for Red Hat Linux-based systems.
emerge	Install/remove Gentoo Linux packages.
pkg_add pkg_delete	Install/remove BSD packages.
pkg_info	Display information about BSD packages.
installp	Install software packages on AIX systems.
lslpp	List installed software on AIX systems.
pkgadd pkgrm	Install/remove Solaris packages.
pkginfo	List installed packages on Sun Solaris systems.
make	Compile and install software from source code.

Glossary of terms used in this section:

APT	(Advanced Packaging Tool) A package manager used on Debian Linux-based systems.
Compile	The process of converting source code into a binary/executable file.
Dependency	A program or library required in order for another program to function properly.
Makefile	A file used during the compilation of software.
Package	A self contained file used for software installation.
Portage	Package manager used on Gentoo Linux-based systems.
Repository	A source of packages used by a package management program.
RPM	(Red Hat Package Manager) A software package format created by Red Hat, Inc.

dpkg

Purpose: Install/remove Debian Linux software packages.

Usage syntax: `! e ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
# dpkg -i apache2_amd64.deb
Q  b      !      !      b ! b bd 3! )      ! b bd 3` b e75/e c*/!
V bd      ! b bd 3!/
T      !      ! b bd 3!/
Q d      !      !      ! b .ec! ///!
Q d      !      !      !      ! ///!
///!
```

Installing the Apache web server package using dpkg

dpkg is the traditional package manager for Debian Linux-based systems. It can be found on Debian and Ubuntu as well as a host of other Linux distributions built on the Debian core.

Using **dpkg**, you can install or remove programs created specifically for Debian-based systems. These packages typically have a `.deb` file extension. The above example demonstrates using the **dpkg** command to install a Debian package.

Note

Most Debian-based systems now utilize a program called **aptitude** to perform software installation tasks. Directly installing packages using **dpkg** is rarely done given that **aptitude** will automatically download and install the requested package(s) and all required dependencies. See page 233 for more information.

Common usage examples:

dpkg -i [PACKAGE]	Install the specified package
dpkg -r [PACKAGE]	Remove the specified package
dpkg -p [PACKAGE]	Remove the specified package and related config files
dpkg -l	List all installed packages

aptitude

Purpose: Automated package manager for Debian Linux-based systems.

Usage syntax: `! b e ! \PQUJPOT^! \BDUJPO^! \QBDLBHF^`

```
# aptitude install apache2
S be ! bd b ! //! E !
C e !e e d! !!!!!!!
S be ! b ! b //! E !
U ! ! b! bd b ! !c ! b e;!
!! b bd 3. . !b bd 3. !b bd 3/3.d ! cb 2! cb 2!
c 6
T e! bd b ;!
!! b bd 3.e d! b bd 3. d! b bd 3. d.d
U ! ! OFX! bd b ! !c ! b e;!
!! b bd 3! b bd 3. . !b bd 3. !b bd 3/3.d ! cb 2
!! cb 2! c 6
!! be e-! 8! ! b e-! 1! ! ! b e! 24! ! be e!/
B ! ! b -! 7493 C! ! bee b ! e ! bd ! !c ! e /!
E ! ! b ! !d ! \Z0 ^@! Z!
//!
```

Installing the Apache web server with aptitude

aptitude is a front-end for the Debian **dpkg** package manager. It simplifies software installation by automatically downloading and installing packages and any required dependencies. In this example, the **aptitude** program will automatically download and install the packages required to run the Apache web server application.

Note

Software repositories listed in! 0 d0b 0 d / ! are used to query the package database for available programs and their download locations.

Common usage examples:

aptitude update	Update the package database
aptitude upgrade	Install the newest versions of all packages
aptitude dist-upgrade	Upgrade the entire distribution
aptitude install [PACKAGE]	Install the specified package
aptitude remove [PACKAGE]	Remove the specified package
aptitude search [NAME]	Search repositories for a package by name
aptitude show [PACKAGE]	Display information about a package
aptitude clean	Clean the package cache
aptitude --purge-unused	Remove unused packages

rpm

Purpose: Install/remove Red Hat Linux packages.

Usage syntax: ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^

```
# rpm -iv nmap-4.85BETA9-1.i386.rpm
Q    b    ! bd b    !    !    b b    //!
    b .5/96CFUB:.2!
//!
```

Installing the nmap program using the rpm command

rpm is the traditional package manager for Red Hat Linux-based systems. It can be found on Red Hat Enterprise Linux and Fedora as well as a host of other Linux distributions built on the Red Hat/Fedora core.

Using **rpm** you can install or remove programs created specifically for Red Hat and Fedora-based systems. These packages typically have a **.rpm** file extension. The above example demonstrates using the **rpm** command to install an RPM package.

Note

Most Red Hat-based systems now utilize a program called **yum** to perform software installation tasks. Directly installing packages using **rpm** is rarely done given that **yum** will automatically download and install the requested package(s) and all required dependencies. See page 235 for more information.

Common usage examples:

rpm -i [PACKAGE]	Install the specified package
rpm -U [PACKAGE]	Upgrade the specified package
rpm -e [PACKAGE]	Remove the specified package
rpm -qa	List all installed packages

yum

Purpose: Automated package manager for Red Hat Linux-based systems.

Usage syntax: `! \PQUJPOT^! \QBDLBHF^`

```
# yum install nmap
M be e! ;! . bd b !
T ! !J b !Q d !
S !E e d !
..?! S ! b bd !d d!
...?! Qbd b ! b / 697! 3;5/87.5/ d22! ! !c ! eb e!
..?! G e! E e d !S !
//^
```

Installing a software package with the yum package manager

yum is a front-end for the Red Hat Linux **rpm** package manager. It simplifies software installation by automatically downloading and installing packages and any required dependencies. In this example, the **yum** command will automatically download and install the packages required to run the **nmap** utility.

Note

Software repositories listed in! 0 d0 /d ! are used to query the package database for available packages and their download locations.

Common usage examples:

yum install [PACKAGE]	Install the specified package
yum remove [PACKAGE]	Remove the specified package
yum update	Install the newest versions of all packages
yum upgrade	Upgrade the distribution to the latest version
yum list	List available and installed packages
yum search [NAME]	Search for the specified package by name

emerge

Purpose: Install/remove Gentoo Linux packages.

Usage syntax: `emerge [options] [package]`

```
# emerge uptime
Db d b !e e d //!e "
???! W ! c e! Nb //!
???! F ! )2! ! 2*! b . 0 . 2/4! ! 0!
???! E be ! ( ;00e / / 0e 0 .
2/4/ b /c 3(!
//!
```

Installing the uptime utility on Gentoo Linux using the emerge program

emerge is a front-end for Gentoo's Portage software manager. It provides automatic software compilation, installation, and dependency fulfillment similar to the previously discussed **aptitude** and **yum** commands.

Portage is a unique package manager in the fact that it compiles software from source code. This is different than most other Linux systems which utilize precompiled binaries when installing software. Compiling software from source code creates a platform-optimized installation that has been shown to provide better performance when compared to precompiled packages. Portage's disadvantage, however, is that it takes much longer to install software for source.

Tip

To learn more about the Portage software manager, see the official Gentoo documentation online at www.gentoo.org/doc/.

Common usage examples:

emerge [PACKAGE]	Install the specified package
emerge -u world	Install the newest versions of all packages
emerge -C [PACKAGE]	Remove the specified package
emerge -s [PACKAGE]	Search for the specified package
emerge --sync	Update the portage database

pkg_add / pkg_delete

Purpose: Install/remove BSD packages.

Usage syntax: `bee! \PQUJPOT^! \QBDLBHF^`

```
# pkg_add -r perl
G d ! ;00 / c e/ 0 c0G CTE0 0 4970 bd b .8/3.
b 0Mb 0 / c //!
D b ! b ! ! 0 0c //!
!!!T ! 0 0 db 0c 0 6/9/;! ! 0 0c 0 !
///
```

Installing a package using the `pkg_add` command

The `pkg_add` command installs software packages on BSD systems. In the above example, `pkg_add` is used to install a package called Perl. The `-r` option instructs `pkg_add` to retrieve the specified package automatically from the BSD software repository.

Tip

The `pkg_add` command uses the default FTP server located at ftp.freebsd.org. For faster download you can specify an FTP mirror using the `QBDLBHFSPPU!` environment variable. For example, typing `export PACKAGEROOT=ftp.ca.freebsd.org` would instruct the `pkg_add` command to use the specified mirror located in Canada. A complete list of FTP mirror sites can be found online at <http://mirrorlist.freebsd.org/FBSDsites.php>.

The `pkg_delete` command uninstalls software packages on BSD systems. In the next example, the previously installed Perl package is removed using the `pkg_delete` command.

Usage syntax: `e ! \QBDLBHF^`

```
# pkg_delete perl-5.8.9_2
S ! b ! ! ! 0 0c //!
!!!S ! 0 0c 0 !
!!!S ! 0 0c 0 6//! E /!
///
```

Removing a package using the `pkg_delete` command

Common usage examples:

<code>pkg_add -r [PACKAGE]</code>	Download and install the specified package
<code>pkg_delete [PACKAGE]</code>	Uninstall the specified package

pkg_info

Purpose: Display information about BSD packages.

Usage syntax: `pkg_info [-a] [-d] [-f] [-i] [-l] [-m] [-n] [-o] [-p] [-q] [-r] [-s] [-t] [-u] [-v] [-w] [-x] [-y] [-z] [-A] [-B] [-C] [-D] [-E] [-F] [-G] [-H] [-I] [-J] [-K] [-L] [-M] [-N] [-O] [-P] [-Q] [-R] [-S] [-T] [-U] [-V] [-W] [-X] [-Y] [-Z] [-a] [-b] [-c] [-d] [-e] [-f] [-g] [-h] [-i] [-j] [-k] [-l] [-m] [-n] [-o] [-p] [-q] [-r] [-s] [-t] [-u] [-v] [-w] [-x] [-y] [-z] [-A] [-B] [-C] [-D] [-E] [-F] [-G] [-H] [-I] [-J] [-K] [-L] [-M] [-N] [-O] [-P] [-Q] [-R] [-S] [-T] [-U] [-V] [-W] [-X] [-Y] [-Z]`

```
# pkg_info
cb .5/1/44!!!!!!U !HOV! Q d (!C !B b !TI !
. c e.e d.311:1:24! E d b ! ! !G CTE! E d b !
Q d !
.1/28`2!!!!!!HOV! ! bd b !
c d .2/24/2!!!!!!B! d b bd ! !d ! c b
```


lslpp

Purpose: List installed software on AIX systems.

Usage syntax: `lslpp [-L] [PACKAGE]`

```
# lslpp -L httpd.base
!!G      !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!M      !!T b !!U      !!E d      ! )V      b      *!
!!.....!
!!      e/cb !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!3/3/7/1!!!!D!!!!G!!!!B bd !I      !T      !
!
!
T b !d e ;!
!B!...!B      e!/
!C!...!C      /!
!D!...!D      e!/
!F!...!FGJY! M d e!/
!P!...!Pc      /! ) b      b      !      b e!      !      !      *!
!@!...!J d      !T b //S      !      d      !.      /!
!
U      !d e ;!
!G!...!J      b      !G      !
!Q!...!Q      e d !
!D!...!D      !
!U!...!G b      !
!S!...!SQN! Qbd b      !
!F!...!J      !G      !
```

Listing an installed package on AIX

The **lslpp** command lists installed software on AIX systems. The example above demonstrates using **lslpp** to list the installation status of the `httpd` package.

Note

Omitting a package name will list all installed software on the system.

Common usage examples:

- lslpp -L
- lslpp -L [PACKAGE]
- List all installed packages
- List the specified install package

pkgadd / pkgrm

Purpose: Install/remove Solaris packages.

Usage syntax:! bee! \PQUJPOT^! \QBUI ^

```
# pkgadd -d /cdrom/sol_10_1009_x86/Solaris_10/Product/
!
U !          ! bd b ! b ! b b bc ;!
//^
!:2!! TVOXb d 3e!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!B bd !X c! T      !W3! E d      b      !
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! ) 497*! 22/21/1-SFW>3116/12/19/12/1:!!
!:3!! TVOXb d 3 !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!B bd !X c! T      !W3! )      *!
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! ) 497*! 22/21/1-SFW>3116/12/19/12/1:!!
!:4!! TVOXb d 3 !!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!B bd !X c! T      !W3! )      *!
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! ) 497*! 22/21/1-SFW>3116/12/19/12/1:!!
!:5!! TVOXb d T!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!T d!      !      !B bd !      e!      !
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! ) 497*! 22/21/1-SFW>3116/12/19/12/1:!!
//^
T d! bd b ) *!      !      !      d      ! )      ! (b      !      d      !
b ! bd b      *! )e b      ;! b      *! \- - - ^! ;:3!
//^
J b b      !      !=TVOXb d 3 ?! b !      dd      /!
```

Installing a software package on Solaris

The **pkgadd** command installs software packages on Solaris systems. The example above demonstrates using **pkgadd** to install packages from the Solaris installation media.

The **pkgrm** command removes packages on Solaris systems. The next example demonstrates removing a package using **pkgrm**.

Usage syntax:! ! \PQUJPOT^! \QBDLBHF^

```
# pkgrm SUNWapch2r
!
U !          ! bd b ! ! d          !      b      e;!
!!! TVOXb d 3 !!B bd !X c! T      !W3! )      *!
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!! ) 497*! 22/21/1-SFW>3116/12/19/12/1:!!
!
E!      ! b      !      !      ! bd b      @! \ - - @- ^!
//^
S b !      !=TVOXb d 3 ?! b !      dd      /!
```

Removing a package on Solaris

Common usage examples:

pkgadd -d [PATH]	Install packages from the specified location
pkgrm [PACKAGE]	Remove the specified package

pkginfo

Purpose: List installed packages on Sun Solaris systems.

Usage syntax: `pkginfo [-o options] [-s package]`

```
# pkginfo | more
!!!!!!CSDNc !!!!!!!C bed !O Y !JJ! H bc !F !!
!!!!!!DBEQ271!!!!!!Beb d! V b271! TDTJ! I !Beb !E !
!!!!!!IQGD!!!!!!B !G c !D b !ICB! E !
!!!!!!ODS 97 !!!!!!!ODS! Q b !T -!PT! G d b !!
!!!!!!OWEB b d!!!!OWJEJB! H b d!T !T b !
!!!!!!OWEB b d!!!!OWJEJB! H b d!T !E d!E !
!!!!!!TL:9 !!!!!!!T L d!TL.OFU! H bc !F !Beb !!
!!!!!!TL !!!!!!!T L d!QDJ.GEEJ! I !Beb !
!!!!!!TVOX2362 !!!!!!!S b !2362! !
!!!!!!TVOX24:5!!!!!!T !JFFF24:5! G b !
!!!!!!TVOX24:5 !!!!!!!T !JFFF24:5! G b !I be !G !
!!!!!!TVOXH c!!!!!!HMC! !M c b ! ! ! !D!
!!!!!!TVOXH !!!!!!!HUL! !U !HJNQ U !)S *!
!!!!!!TVOXH !!!!!!!HUL! !U !HJNQ U !)V *!
HOPNF3!!!!!!TVOXQ !!!!!!!U !Q ! -! c b !b e!!
//^
```

Listing installed packages on Solaris systems

The **pkginfo** command lists installed packages on Solaris systems. Executing **pkginfo** with no options lists all installed packages as demonstrated in the above example. Specifying a package name will list the package as shown in the next example.

```
# pkginfo SUNWapch2r
!!!!!!TVOXb d 3 !B bd !X c! T !W3! ) *!
```

Displaying a specific package using pkginfo

Common usage examples:

- pkginfo**

pkginfo [PACKAGE]
- List all installed software packages

List the specified software package

make

Purpose: Compile and install software from source code.

Usage syntax: `! b ! \PQUJPOT^! \GJMF^`

```
# ls -l Makefile
. . . . .! 2! d! d! 2747! 3118.19.21! 24;59! Nb      !
# make && make install
+++!      ! b !      !+++!
b \2^;! F      !e d      ! (0      0 d 0E      0d      .1/59(!
dd! .EIBWF` MBTUMPH` I! . ! d      b      ! d      b      /d!
chklastlog.c: In function `main(;!
chklastlog.c:167: warning: format `%ld(! expects type `long int(=! c      !
! 3 has type `int(!
chklastlog.c:167: warning: format `%ld(! expects type `long int(=! c      !
! 4 has type `uid_t(!
dd! .EIBWF` MBTUMPH` I! . ! d      ! d      /d!
//!
```

Manually compiling software from source code using make

The **make** command compiles and installs programs from source code. Source code compatible with the **make** command is distributed with what is known as a `Nb` . The `Nb` ! is a script used to build and install the source code using the **make** command.

In the above example, the **make** and **make install** commands are combined to build the source code of a program and install it.

Note

*Most users will never have to compile software from source since major distributions provide prebuilt packages for nearly every program available. Additionally, Linux tools such as **yum**, **apt**, and **emerge** greatly simplify software installation and dependency fulfillment.*

Common usage examples:

make	Compile source code
make install	Install compiled source code

Section 15:

System Administration Utilities

Overview

This section covers two very helpful system administration utilities for commercial Unix systems:

SMIT: System Management Interface Tool for AIX

SAM: System Administration Manager for HP-UX

SMIT and SAM are menu-driven applications that can be used to simplify complex administration tasks such as managing hardware, software, users/groups, etc. While every task that can be performed in SMIT or SAM can be executed on the command line, running the same task within these utilities is generally much easier and faster. They also provide an added layer of protection from mistakes by ensuring that the requested task is executed with the correct parameters.

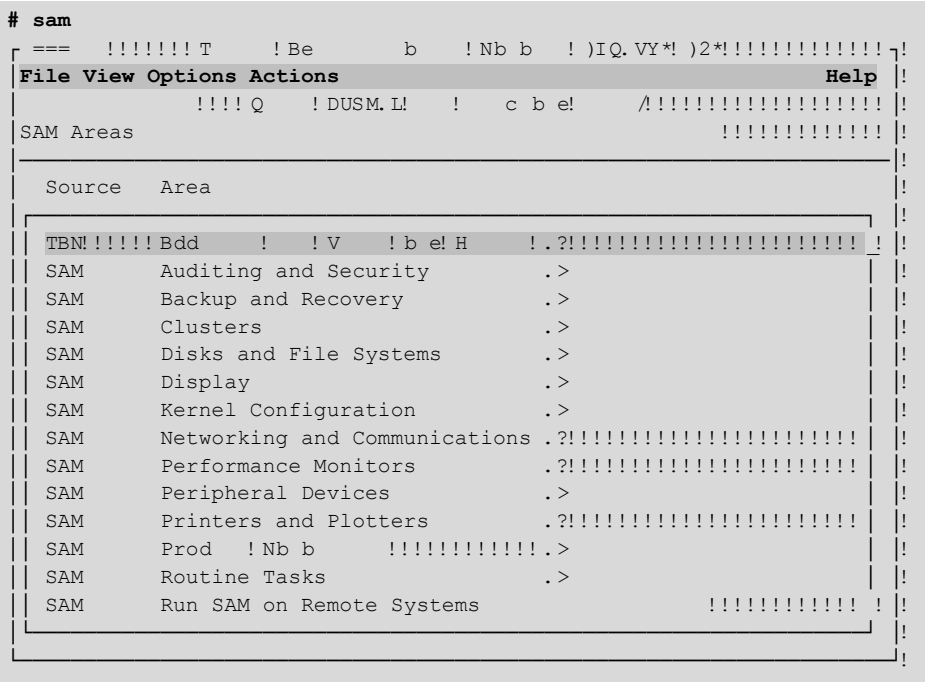
Commands covered in this section:

Command	Purpose
<code>sam</code>	HP-UX System Administration Manager
<code>smit</code>	AIX System Management Interface Tool

sam

Purpose: Menu-driven system administration utility for HP-UX systems.

Usage syntax: `! b`



Screenshot of the HP-UX System Administration Manager

sam is a menu-driven administration utility for HP-UX systems. It can be used to manage all aspects of an HP-UX system.

The above example displays a screen shot of the main menu in **sam**. Within **sam**, the arrow keys are used to navigate the menus and the **Enter** key is used to select items. Pressing the **Tab** key activates the menu bar at the top of the screen allowing access to additional features.

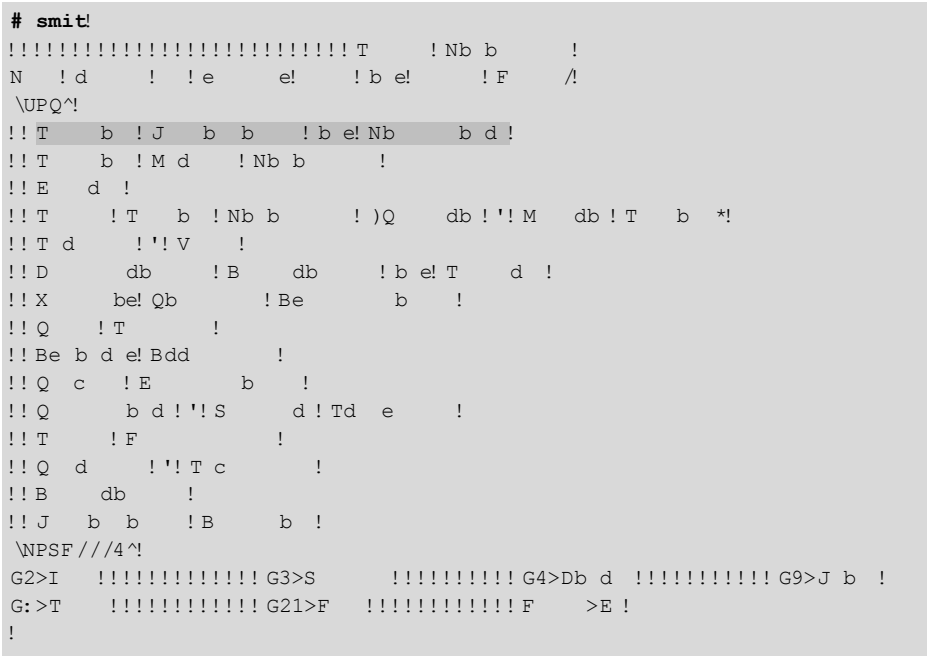
Common usage examples:

sam | Start the HP-UX system administration manager

smit

Purpose: Menu-driven system administration utility for IBM AIX systems.

Usage syntax:!



Screenshot of the IBM AIX System Management Interface Tool

smit is a menu-driven administration utility for IBM AIX systems. It can be used to manage all aspects of an AIX system.

The above example displays a screen shot of the main menu in **smit**. Within **smit**, the arrow keys are used to navigate the menus and the **Enter** key is used to select items. Function keys (i.e., **F1**, **F2**, etc.) provide additional options within **smit** and are defined at the bottom of each screen.

Common usage examples:

smit | Start the AIX system management interface tool

Appendix A:

Bash Shortcut Keys

Download and print this list at www.dontfearthecommandline.com

Key(s)	Function
CTRL + C	Terminate current program
CTRL + Z	Suspend current program
CTRL + D	Exit the current shell
Tab	Command/file auto-completion
Home	Go to the beginning of the command line
End	Go to the end of the command line
CTRL + L	Clear the screen
Backspace	Deletes text behind the cursor
ATL + Backspace	Delete entire word behind the cursor
Delete	Delete text in front of the cursor
CTRL + R	Search command history
Up Arrow	Cycle backward through command history
Down Arrow	Cycle forward through command history
Left Arrow	Move the cursor left one character
Right Arrow	Move the cursor right one character
ALT + B	Move the cursor back one word
ALT + F	Move the cursor forward one word
CTRL + U	Cut all text before the cursor
CTRL + K	Cut all text after the cursor
ALT + D	Cut the currently selected word
CTRL + Y	Paste previously cut text
CTRL + _ (Underscore)	Undo changes typed on the command line
CTRL + T	Transpose the previous two characters on the command line
ALT + T	Transpose the previous two words on the command line
ATL + L	Convert word to lowercase
ATL + U	Convert word to uppercase